

Oracle I/O Domain Administration Guide

ORACLE

Part No: E53172-16
September 2021

Part No: E53172-16

Copyright © 2021, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" or "commercial computer software documentation" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

Diversity and Inclusion

Oracle is fully committed to diversity and inclusion. Oracle recognizes the influence of ethnic and cultural values and is working to remove language from our products and documentation that might be considered insensitive. While doing so, we are also mindful of the necessity to maintain compatibility with our customers' existing technologies and the need to ensure continuity of service as Oracle's offerings and industry standards evolve. Because of these technical constraints, our effort to remove insensitive terms is an ongoing, long-term process.

Référence: E53172-16

Copyright © 2021, Oracle et/ou ses affiliés.

Ce logiciel et la documentation qui l'accompagne sont protégés par les lois sur la propriété intellectuelle. Ils sont concédés sous licence et soumis à des restrictions d'utilisation et de divulgation. Sauf stipulation expresse de votre contrat de licence ou de la loi, vous ne pouvez pas copier, reproduire, traduire, diffuser, modifier, accorder de licence, transmettre, distribuer, exposer, exécuter, publier ou afficher le logiciel, même partiellement, sous quelque forme et par quelque procédé que ce soit. Par ailleurs, il est interdit de procéder à toute ingénierie inverse du logiciel, de le désassembler ou de le décompiler, excepté à des fins d'interopérabilité avec des logiciels tiers ou tel que prescrit par la loi.

Les informations fournies dans ce document sont susceptibles de modification sans préavis. Par ailleurs, Oracle Corporation ne garantit pas qu'elles soient exemptes d'erreurs et vous invite, le cas échéant, à lui en faire part par écrit.

Si ce logiciel, ou la documentation qui l'accompagne, est livré sous licence au Gouvernement des Etats-Unis, ou à quiconque qui aurait souscrit la licence de ce logiciel pour le compte du Gouvernement des Etats-Unis, la notice suivante s'applique :

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" or "commercial computer software documentation" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

Ce logiciel ou matériel a été développé pour un usage général dans le cadre d'applications de gestion des informations. Ce logiciel ou matériel n'est pas conçu ni n'est destiné à être utilisé dans des applications à risque, notamment dans des applications pouvant causer un risque de dommages corporels. Si vous utilisez ce logiciel ou matériel dans le cadre d'applications dangereuses, il est de votre responsabilité de prendre toutes les mesures de secours, de sauvegarde, de redondance et autres mesures nécessaires à son utilisation dans des conditions optimales de sécurité. Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés déclinent toute responsabilité quant aux dommages causés par l'utilisation de ce logiciel ou matériel pour des applications dangereuses.

Oracle et Java sont des marques déposées d'Oracle Corporation et/ou de ses affiliés. Tout autre nom mentionné peut correspondre à des marques appartenant à d'autres propriétaires qu'Oracle.

Intel et Intel Inside sont des marques ou des marques déposées d'Intel Corporation. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, et le logo AMD sont des marques ou des marques déposées d'Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX est une marque déposée de The Open Group.

Ce logiciel ou matériel et la documentation qui l'accompagne peuvent fournir des informations ou des liens donnant accès à des contenus, des produits et des services émanant de tiers. Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés déclinent toute responsabilité ou garantie expresse quant aux contenus, produits ou services émanant de tiers, sauf mention contraire stipulée dans un contrat entre vous et Oracle. En aucun cas, Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés ne sauraient être tenus pour responsables des pertes subies, des coûts occasionnés ou des dommages causés par l'accès à des contenus, produits ou services tiers, ou à leur utilisation, sauf mention contraire stipulée dans un contrat entre vous et Oracle.

Accessibilité de la documentation

Pour plus d'informations sur l'engagement d'Oracle pour l'accessibilité de la documentation, visitez le site Web Oracle Accessibility Program, à l'adresse : <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

Accès aux services de support Oracle

Les clients Oracle qui ont souscrit un contrat de support ont accès au support électronique via My Oracle Support. Pour plus d'informations, visitez le site <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> ou le site <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> si vous êtes malentendant.

Contents

Using This Documentation	11
Product Documentation Library	11
Feedback	11
Understanding the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	13
SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview	13
Administrator Navigation Panel	14
User Navigation Panel	16
▼ Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version	18
Domain Requirements	19
Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses	19
Administrative Task Overview	20
Domain Configuration Task Overview	21
Understanding SuperCluster Domains	23
SuperCluster Domain Overview	23
Domain Resources	24
Initializing and Configuring the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	27
▼ Initialize the Assistant	27
▼ Set Up Networks	29
▼ Assign Fibre Channel Addresses	33
▼ Configure Security Settings (Administrators)	34
▼ Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned (Administrators)	36
▼ Enable or Disable Root Domain Groups (Administrators)	37
▼ Create Root Domain Groups (Administrators)	38
Accessing the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	41

▼ Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	41
▼ Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	43
Assistant Tool Tips	43
Managing Resources and Networks	45
▼ View System Resources	45
▼ View Dedicated Domain Resources (Administrators)	48
▼ View Network Resources	48
▼ Add or Edit a Network (Administrators)	51
▼ Configure Port-Paired Networks (Administrators)	53
▼ Add VLAN Tags (Administrators)	56
▼ Delete a VLAN Tag (Administrators)	57
Support for Fibre Channel Interfaces in Domains	58
Domain Storage Resources	58
▼ Configure the Assistant With Added Storage Servers (Administrators)	59
Managing User Accounts	61
User Roles and Privileges	61
▼ Plan Domain Users and Resource Allocations	62
Domain Users Worksheet	63
▼ View Users	64
▼ Add a User (Administrators)	64
▼ Allocate Resources to a User (Administrators)	66
▼ View Resource Allowances	68
▼ Change Your Password	69
▼ Request a Password Reset	70
▼ Change a User's Password (Administrators)	71
▼ Reset a User's Password (Administrators)	73
▼ Edit a User's Email Address or Role (Administrators)	75
▼ Delete a User (Administrators)	76
Managing Recipes and Templates	79
Default Resource Recipes	79
▼ View Recipes	80
▼ Create a Resource Recipe	82
▼ Create a Network Recipe	84

▼ Edit a Recipe	86
▼ Delete a Recipe	87
▼ Upload an OVM Template (Deprecated)	87
Creating and Deploying I/O Domains	91
▼ Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method	91
Required Information for Configuring I/O Domains	92
▼ View I/O Domains	95
▼ Create a Database I/O Domain	97
▼ Create a Database Zone Domain	105
▼ Change the Name of a SCAN Network	113
▼ Create an Application I/O Domain	113
▼ Create an I/O Domain With an OVM Template (Deprecated)	120
▼ Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources	127
▼ Transform a Database Domain Into a Database Zone Domain	131
▼ Deploy an I/O Domain	133
▼ Export an I/O Domains Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager	135
Configuring Zones	137
▼ Configure a Database Zone	137
▼ Export a Zones Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager	142
▼ Delete Zone Configuration Information	145
Relocating Domains with Freeze and Thaw	147
▼ Determine Resource Availability Before Relocation	148
▼ Freeze a Domain	149
▼ Edit a Frozen I/O Domain	152
▼ Thaw a Domain	153
▼ Verify the Relocation	157
Deleting Domains	159
▼ Delete a Single Node From a Cluster	159
▼ Delete All Nodes in a Cluster	160
▼ Delete a Domain	161
Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health	163

▼ Monitor Current Activity	163
▼ Monitor Past Activity (Administrators Only)	164
▼ Monitor SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health (Administrators Only)	165
▼ Start or Stop a Management Agent	168
▼ Start or Stop an I/O Domain	170
Using SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST APIs (Deprecated)	171
▼ Get an Authentication Token	171
▼ Access the REST API Catalog (BUI)	172
REST API Network Identifiers	175
Example: I/O Domain Group JSON File	176
REST API Reference	180
Agent Request APIs – /api/agentrequest	180
Deployment Group APIs – /api/deploymentgroup	181
Domain Type APIs – /api/flavour	182
Health Report APIs – /api/health/reports/	186
Install Bundle APIs – /api/install_bundle/	187
I/O Domain APIs – /api/iodomain/	188
I/O Domain Deletion APIs – /api/iodomain/id/	193
IP Address APIs – /api/ip_address/id/	202
Network APIs – /api/network/	203
Network Recipe APIs – /api/network/recipe/	205
Physical Domain APIs – /api/physicaldomain/	207
I/O Domain Recipe APIs – /api/recipe/	214
Resource Allowance APIs – /api/resourceallowance/	217
SCAN Address Group APIs – /api/scan_address_group/	218
System Log APIs – /api/systemlog/	219
User APIs – /api/user/	219
Zone List API – /api/zone	221
Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone	233
▼ Prepare to Configure Databases	233
▼ Verify Storage Server Disk Space	234
▼ Obtain the Latest Version of OEDA	235
▼ Obtain the Latest Database Binary Files	237

Creating Database Configuration Files (OEDA)	239
Important Cautions	239
▼ Export an XML Configuration File	240
▼ Start OEDA	242
▼ Import the Most Recent Configuration File	244
▼ Review Existing Configuration Information	244
▼ Review the Identify Compute Node Operating System Page	245
▼ Review the Management and Private Networks Page	246
▼ Complete the Define Clusters Page	248
▼ Complete the Cluster Page	252
▼ Complete the Cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks Page	258
▼ Verify Remaining Configuration Information	260
▼ Generate the Configuration Files	261
 Installing Databases on a Database Domain	 263
Important Cautions	263
▼ Install Databases (install.sh)	263
 Glossary	 267
 Index	 271

Using This Documentation

- **Overview** – Describes how to administer Oracle SuperCluster I/O Domains using the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.
- **Audience** – I/O Domain administrators and users.
- **Required knowledge** – Experience configuring SuperCluster domains and resources.

Product Documentation Library

Documentation and resources for this product and related products are available at:

- SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 library – https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E58626_01
- SuperCluster M6-32 library – https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E41531_01
- SuperCluster T5-8 library – https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E40166_01

Feedback

Provide feedback about this documentation at <http://www.oracle.com/goto/docfeedback>.

Understanding the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

These topics provide an overview of the assistant:

- [“SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview” on page 13](#)
- [“Administrator Navigation Panel” on page 14](#)
- [“User Navigation Panel” on page 16](#)
- [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#)
- [“Domain Requirements” on page 19](#)
- [“Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses” on page 19](#)
- [“Domain Storage Resources” on page 58](#)
- [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20](#)
- [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#)

SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview

This guide is updated to cover the version of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant that is included with SuperCluster software version 3.0. However, this guide also provides information on previous versions. When a particular topic is version specific, it is noted. To learn how to check your installed version, see [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#).

Note - The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant was formerly called the I/O Domain Creation tool.

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant enables you to manage the life cycle of I/O domains on SuperCluster systems. You create and delete domains on demand, allocating CPU, memory, and network resources as needed. The assistant automatically calculates a predefined amount of storage, then calculates additional resources for swap and dump based on the allocated CPU and memory resources.

From an administrator account, you can create additional user accounts that have full or limited privileges, and unlimited or limited resources. The users can then create their own domains.

Administrators and users can create resource and network recipes that are used to automatically assign a certain amount of resources to domains.

The assistant enables administrators and users to create I/O Domains that run Oracle Solaris plus applications (Application Domains), or Oracle Database (Database Domains or Database Zone Domains). For further details about domains, see [“SuperCluster Domain Overview” on page 23](#).

When you use the assistant to deploy a domain, the assistant performs a number of complex activities in the background to configure the domain and install the OS.

Administrators can use the assistant to monitor deployment activity, tool activity, and to obtain a status of the health of domains.

Administrator Navigation Panel

The assistant runs in a browser. The left navigation panel provides access to various features, and these features differ based on the role of the user.

Users without the administrator role only have access to a subset of options. For more information, see [“User Navigation Panel” on page 16](#).

This example shows that all domains are displayed (regardless of who created the domain) for users with the administrator role.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The navigation panel on the left lists various features: ID Domains, Zones, Dedicated Domains, Recipes, Network Resources, Physical Hosts, Queue, Users and Allowances, Settings, Management Agents, Health Monitor, System Log, and Profile. The main content area is titled 'IO Domains' and contains two tables.

List of IO Domains

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	1	Ready for Use	View
finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View
branch01	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	user01	3	0	Ready for Use	View
branch02	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	user01	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
io-scan-25	179.3	179.4	179.5	111	admin	1
io-scan-27	179.17	179.18	179.19		user01	3

The navigation panel provides access to these features:

- **I/O Domains** – Displays configured domains and [SCAN](#) address groups. You can add, edit, delete, deploy, and dequeue domains, and start or stop a domain. You can also export configuration files that are used to create a database domain, or for Oracle Enterprise Manager.
- **Zones** – Configure a new zone or remove an existing zone configuration from the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. SuperCluster 2.5 (or later) lets you configure database zones in a Database Domain. Provisioning these zones is not automated with the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, but you can generate an import file for the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) with the Export for JOC button.
- **Dedicated Domains** – Available as of SuperCluster version 3.0. Displays the dedicated domains, root domains, and Oracle Database zone domains that were created when SuperCluster was installed. You can also access additional details about the CPU and memory allocations, networking details, and I/O Domain dependencies (root domains).
- **Recipes** – Displays preset resource allocations for cores, memory, and network configurations that can be used multiple times to configure resources for I/O domains. You can use the default provided recipes, or create your own recipes.
- **OVM Templates (not shown)** – This option is only available on SuperCluster version 2.6 and earlier. Upload OVM templates that provide a combined OS and application configuration that can then be used to create domains that are automatically configured for the application.
- **Network Resources** – View and manage network resources that are used by the domains.
- **Physical Hosts** – View all the resources on the system and the amount of allocated and available resources.

- **Queue** – View the status of deploying domains and pending changed resource allocations. You can also access the process queue. Prior to SuperCluster version 3.0, this was called the Deployment Queue.
- **Users and Allowances** – View and manage users and allocate their resources.
- **Settings** – Configure how IP addresses are assigned. Configure security settings for passwords. Enable or disable root domain groups. Specify the type of storage servers that are added to the system.
- **Management Agents** – Displays real-time information on the state of each I/O domain. You can start or stop a management agent on each physical host. Running management agents provides the ability to start and stop I/O Domains.
- **Health Monitor** – Monitor the status of the assistant and manage any failures that might be detected.
- **System Log** – View timestamped tool activities.
- **Profile** – Change the password or email address of a user.

For more information about the I/O Domains screen, see [“View I/O Domains” on page 95](#).

Related Information

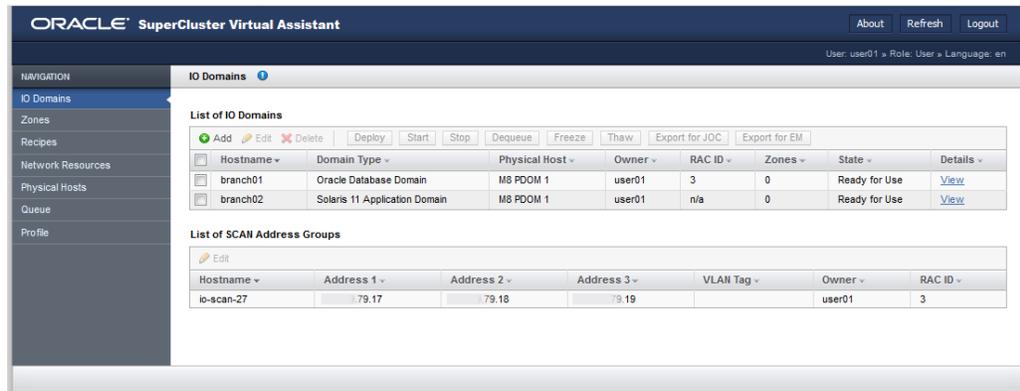
- [“User Navigation Panel” on page 16](#)
- [“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61](#)

User Navigation Panel

Non-administrator users are restricted to a subset of tool functions. The navigation panel has fewer options. In some cases, additional detailed views are not available. Additionally, the user navigation panel only shows I/O Domains that are owned by the user.

For more information about the differences between administrators and users, see [“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61](#).

This example shows what is displayed for regular users without the administrator role.



The navigation panel provides access to these features:

- **I/O Domains** – Displays the I/O Domains and SCAN address groups that are configured on the system. This screen also provides access to add, edit, delete, deploy, and dequeue I/O Domains. You can also export configuration files that are used to create a database domain, or for Oracle Enterprise Manager.
- **Zones** – Configure a new zone or remove an existing zone configuration from the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. SuperCluster 2.5 (or later) lets you configure database zones in a Database Domain. Provisioning these zones is not automated with the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, but you can generate an import file for the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) with the Export for JOC button.
- **Recipes** – Displays preset resource allocations for cores, memory, and network configurations that can be used multiple times to configure resources for I/O domains. You can use the default provided recipes, or create your own recipes.
- **Network Resources** – View and manage network resources that are used by the I/O Domains.
- **Physical Hosts** – View all the resources on the system and the amount of allocated and available resources.
- **Queue** – View the status of deploying I/O Domains and pending changed resource allocations. Prior to SuperCluster version 3.0, this was called the Deployment Queue.
- **Profile** – Change the password or email address of a user.

Note - In this example, the I/O Domains screen is displayed, listing the domains. Because this is a non-administrator user, only the domains owned by the user are displayed.

Related Information

- [“Administrator Navigation Panel” on page 14](#)

- [“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61](#)

▼ Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant is available on SuperClusters with the latest versions of software enhancements. The assistant is part of the `osc-domcreate` package.

Perform this task to see if the assistant is available on SuperCluster and to identify the version of the assistant.

1. **On the management network, log into the control domain on the first [compute server](#).**
2. **Use the `pkg info` command to display the version of the assistant.**

In the output, the value for Branch indicates the version of the assistant. For example:

```
# pkg info osc-domcreate
   Name: system/platform/supercluster/osc-domcreate
  Summary: Oracle SuperCluster IO Domain creation tool
 Description: Oracle SuperCluster IO Domain creation tool
    State: Installed
  Publisher: exa-family
   Version: 0.5.11
    Branch: 3.0.0.1803
Packaging Date: April 24, 2019 at 11:36:58 PM
    Size: 7.41 MB
    FMRI: pkg://exa-family/system/platform/supercluster/osc-domcreate@0.5.11-
3.0.0.1803:20190325T233658Z
```

Note - If the `pkg info` command does not return any package information, the assistant is not installed on your system.

Related Information

- [“SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview” on page 13](#)
- [“Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses” on page 19](#)
- [“Domain Storage Resources” on page 58](#)

Domain Requirements

Before creating a domain, the system administrator must ensure that these requirements are met:

- Oracle personnel completed the initial software installation, configuration, and created [Root Domains](#) as specified in your configuration worksheets.

Refer to the *Oracle SuperCluster T5-8 Owner's Guide*, the Overview Guide for your model (for example, *Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Overview Guide*), and your configuration worksheets.

- (Only applicable for SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier) The CPU and memory resources for a [dedicated domain](#) are configured as needed using the `osc-setcoremem` tool. After the domains are created, you cannot change resources using the `osc-setcoremem` tool.
- The Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant must be available on SuperCluster. See [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#).
- To initialize the assistant, you must have access to the XML file that describes the configuration of your system. Obtain the name and location of this file from your Oracle representative.
- You must provide additional IP addresses for the domains. See [“Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses” on page 19](#).
- Your browser must support secure SSL protocols (TLS version 1.2. or higher). Ensure that you are using the latest version of your browser.

Additional required information is needed for each I/O Domain that is created. For those details, see [“Required Information for Configuring I/O Domains” on page 92](#).

Related Information

- [“SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview” on page 13](#)
- [“Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses” on page 19](#)
- [“Domain Storage Resources” on page 58](#)

Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses

This table lists the minimum number of IP addresses you need for each I/O Domain. You can configure more than the minimum. You or your network administrator provide the IP addresses, and the assistant enables you to add and remove networks as needed. See [“Managing Resources and Networks” on page 45](#).

	Database I/O Domain	Application I/O Domain
Management network IP addresses	1	1
10GbE Client network IP addresses	1	1
10GbE SCAN IP addresses Note - If you create a RAC, no additional SCAN IPs are required.	3	
10GbE VIP IP addresses	1	
Storage IB network IP addresses	1	1
Exadata IB network IP addresses	1	
Versaboot network IP addresses	2	2

The utility automatically assigns two alternate MAC addresses per core in each domain. If you plan to create zones in the domain, multiply the number of cores by two to determine the number of MAC addresses available for zones. If you increase the number of cores in a domain, you can increase the number of alternate MAC addresses. For details, refer to the My Oracle Support knowledge article ID 2198060.1 at <http://support.oracle.com>.

Related Information

- [“SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview” on page 13](#)
- [“Domain Requirements” on page 19](#)
- [“Domain Storage Resources” on page 58](#)

Administrative Task Overview

This table provides a summary of the tasks that administrators perform to configure and manage the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. These steps are performed by the assistant administrator.

Steps	Links
1. (One time only) Initialize the assistant and add network resources. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that the assistant is available and determine the version of the assistant. 2. Initialize the assistant so that the assistant is configured specifically for your SuperCluster configuration. 3. Set up network resources to support the creation of domains. 4. Configure security parameters. 	“Initializing and Configuring the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 27

Steps	Links
2. Create domain users.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Learn about the different types of user roles. 2. Determine which users will have access to the assistant. 3. Identify the available resources. 4. Create the user accounts. 5. (Optional) Allocate resources to users. 6. Provide the users with their login credentials and tool URL. 	“Managing User Accounts” on page 61
3. Review the resource and network recipes, and create new recipes if needed.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The use of recipes is optional, but they simplify the creation of domain resources and network parameters. Review the default recipes. If the recipes do not provide the amount of resources and network configurations for the domains you plan to create, you can create your own recipes. 2. (Only applicable for SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier) If you plan to configure domains with preconfigured OVM templates, upload the templates into the assistant. 	“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79
4. Monitor domain activity, resources, deployments, and health.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Monitor available resources. 2. Check the queue to see the state of the domain deployments. 3. Check the health status of domains by viewing the Health Monitor screen. 4. View the log to see tool activity. 	“Managing Resources and Networks” on page 45 “Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163

Domain Configuration Task Overview

This table provides a summary of the steps you perform to configure and deploy domains.

These tasks can be performed by administrators or non-administrators.

Steps	Links
1. Review the resource and network recipes, and if needed create new recipes.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The use of recipes is optional, but they simplify the creation of I/O Domain resources and network parameters. Review the default recipes. If the recipes do not provide the amount of resources and network configurations for the domains you plan to create, you can create your own recipes. 	“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79
2. Configure and deploy domains and database zones.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose a method for creating domains. 2. Gather required information. 3. Create the domain. 	“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91 “Configuring Zones” on page 137

Steps	Links
<ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Deploy the domain.5. For Database zones, configure the zones.	
3. (Only for Database Domains and Zones) Install and configure Oracle Databases.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Plan and prepare to install Oracle Database.	“Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone” on page 233
<ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Create configuration files using OEDA.	“Creating Database Configuration Files (OEDA)” on page 239
<ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Install the database.	“Installing Databases on a Database Domain” on page 263
4. Monitor domain deployments and resources.	
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Check the queue to see the state of the domain deployments.	“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163
<ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Monitor available resources by viewing the Physical Host screen.	

Understanding SuperCluster Domains

These topics provide an overview of SuperCluster domains:

- [“SuperCluster Domain Overview” on page 23](#)
- [“Domain Resources” on page 24](#)

SuperCluster Domain Overview

Oracle personnel customize each SuperCluster with domain (**LDom**) configurations according to site requirements. Each domain operates on its own set of compute resources, including CPU, memory, and I/O devices. As of SuperCluster version 3.0, you can view the domain configurations in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Dedicated Domains page (see [“View System Resources” on page 45](#))

Note - The exact domain configuration for a given SuperCluster varies depending on the SuperCluster model and site requirements. For details about supported domain configurations, refer to the [Oracle SuperCluster T5-8 Owner’s Guide](#), the *Overview Guide* for other SuperCluster models (for example, [Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Overview Guide](#)), or your configuration worksheets.

This table lists SuperCluster-specific domain types and describes how CPU, memory, and networking resources are managed.

I/O Domain	Domain Type	Description
Application Domains and Database Domains	Dedicated	Provide these services: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Application Domain – Boots and runs on Oracle Solaris 11, and hosts application services.■ Database Domain – Domains where you install and run the Oracle Database software. An Oracle Database software installation benefits from the performance of Exadata technology. These domains can not run any OS release prior to Oracle Solaris 11.■ Database Zone Domain – Domains where you can install multiple Database Zones. These domains can not run any OS release prior to Oracle Solaris 11.

I/O Domain	Domain Type	Description
Root Domain	Dedicated	<p>You can use these domains as-is, or use the <code>osc-setcoremem</code> utility to set aside a certain amount of their CPU and memory resources. The resources that are set aside are <i>parked</i>, and available for use in I/O Domains.</p> <p>For more information on the <code>osc-setcoremem</code> utility, refer to the Oracle SuperCluster T5-8 Owner's Guide or the Oracle SuperCluster Administration Guide for your model (for example, Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Administration Guide).</p> <p>As of SuperCluster version 3.0 (and later), you can view the dedicated domains in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant's Dedicated Domains tab. See "View System Resources" on page 45.</p>
I/O Domain	SR-IOV	<p>Supports SR-IOV functionality by hosting I/O devices. Root domains reserve a small set of resources for I/O hosting functionality. The remaining resources are parked, creating a pool of resources that you can further dynamically virtualize into <i>I/O Domains</i>.</p> <p>As of SuperCluster version 3.0 (and later), you can view the root domains in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant's Dedicated Domains tab. See "View System Resources" on page 45.</p> <p>You create, delete, and deploy I/O Domains using the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. The assistant enables you to assign resources from the CPU and memory repositories, and from virtual functions hosted by Root Domains.</p> <p>When you configure an I/O Domain, you assign it as an Application Domain, a Database Domain, or a Database Zone Domain. These I/O Domains provide the same functionality as dedicated Application and Database domains, with the added flexibility of being able to delete and add domains as needed (limited by available resources).</p> <p>I/O Domains cannot run any OS releases prior to Oracle Solaris 11. A Database Zone Domain supports multiple Database Zones.</p> <p>You can view the I/O domains in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant's I/O Domain tab. See "View I/O Domains" on page 95.</p>

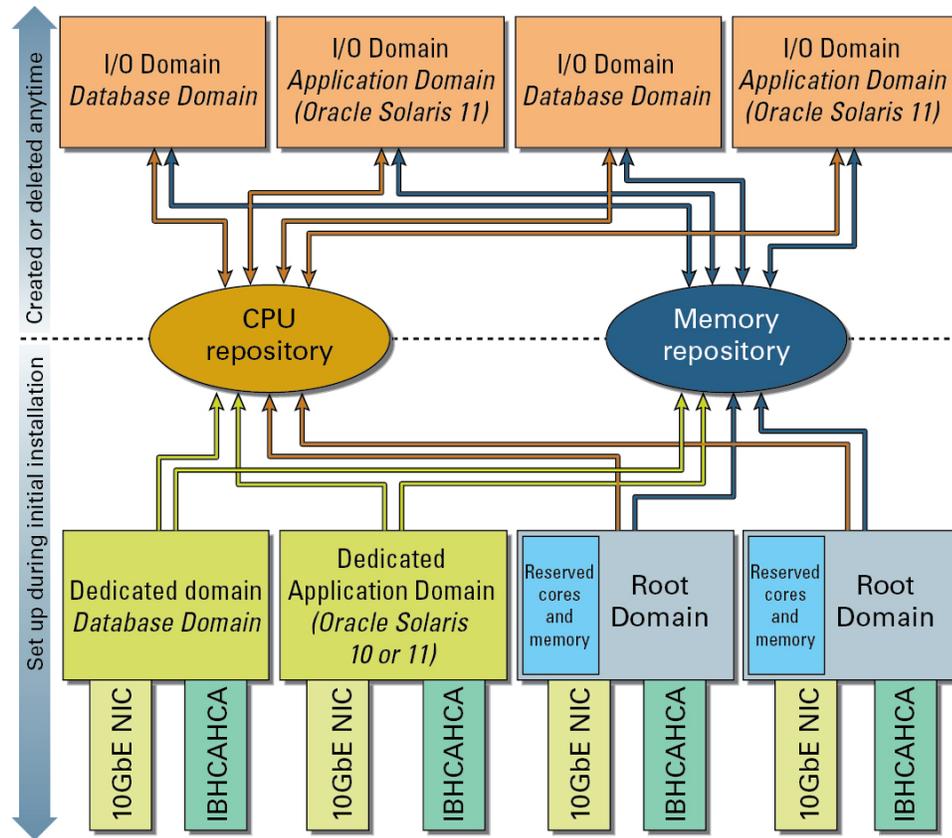
Related Information

- ["Domain Resources" on page 24](#)
- ["SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview" on page 13](#)

Domain Resources

The amount of CPU, memory, and network resources available for domains depends on the SuperCluster model and the domain configuration that is set up during the initial installation.

This figure depicts how the CPU and memory resources are made available for the creation of domains. The figure represents one compute node on a SuperCluster T5-8 or one [PDomain](#) on a SuperCluster M6-32.



Domains are assigned resources from repositories. This enables domains to be configured with more CPU and memory than what is available from a single Root Domain, as long as there are adequate CPU and memory resources available from the repositories of the compute node.

If a domain is deleted, the resources are returned to the repositories.

The resources in the repositories are dictated by these activities:

- During installation** – If Root Domains are configured, the majority of the Root Domain CPU and memory resources are automatically parked in the CPU and memory repositories. A small number of CPU and memory resources are reserved for the Root Domain itself. IB and 10GbE interfaces are made available to domains in the form of a virtual function (VF) created from the physical devices in each Root Domain. These physical devices—IB HCAs and 10GbE NICs—are referred to as physical functions (PFs). Multiple VFs are created from each PF for use by domains, and each VF operates in the same way as the underlying physical device from which it is created.

- **During subsequent configuration** – You can use the `osc-setcoremem` utility to park CPU and memory resources from dedicated domains. The [parked resources](#) are placed in the CPU and memory repositories, making them available for domains. Depending on the version of SuperCluster software, parked resources have these conditions:
 - SuperCluster version 2.6 (or earlier) – After you create I/O Domains, any parked dedicated domain resources cannot be returned to the dedicated domains.
 - SuperCluster version 3.0 (or later) – After you create I/O Domains, you can use `osc-setcoremem` to unpark resources, returning the resources to dedicated domains.

Related Information

- [“SuperCluster Domain Overview” on page 23](#)
- [“SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Overview” on page 13](#)

Initializing and Configuring the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

These topics describe how to initialize and configure the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant:

- [“Initialize the Assistant” on page 27](#)
- [“Set Up Networks” on page 29](#)
- [“Assign Fibre Channel Addresses” on page 33](#)
- [“Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)” on page 34](#)
- [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#)
- [“Enable or Disable Root Domain Groups \(Administrators\)” on page 37](#)
- [“Create Root Domain Groups \(Administrators\)” on page 38](#)

▼ Initialize the Assistant

You must perform this procedure the first time that the assistant is accessed. In most cases, your Oracle representative performed this task during the initial configuration of SuperCluster.

1. **Open a browser on a system that has network access to SuperCluster.**

2. **In a browser, enter this URL in the address field and press Return.**

`https://compute_server_1-Control_dom:8000`

Replace `compute_server_1-Control_dom` with the first compute server's control domain name or IP address.

3. **(Optional) Bookmark the login page.**

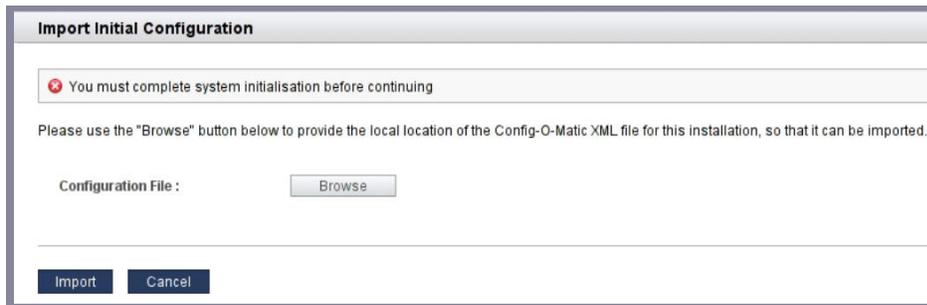
4. **Log in using these initial credentials.**

- User name – `admin`
- Password – `welcome1`

5. In the left navigation panel, select Import Initial Config.

The Initialization and Import Initial Config tabs are only displayed when the assistant requires initialization (usually the first time you access the assistant).

If these tabs are not displayed, it is possible that Oracle personnel performed the initialization. If this is the case, go to [“Set Up Networks” on page 29](#).



6. Click Browse and locate the XML configuration file that was created by Oracle personnel.

The XML configuration file changed in SuperCluster software version 2.3:

- Prior to version 2.3 – The name and location of the XML file is determined by Oracle personnel when they installed SuperCluster software. The file name is usually `system_name.c-o-m_config.xml`.
- Version 2.3 or later – The file name is usually `system_name-iodct.xml`. This file is located on the control domain of the first PDomain in the `/var/tmp/sscdata/config` directory.

7. Click Import.

The assistant is initialized with the SuperCluster configuration and the Network Resources screen is displayed.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The main content area displays a warning: "You must complete network initialisation before continuing". Below this, there is a table of Imported Network Resources:

Network Identifier	Default Route	Netmask	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Total IPs	Details
Management Network	192.0.2.254	255.255.255.0	192.0.2.1	192.0.2.100	100	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.101	192.0.2.155	54	View
10Gb Client Network	198.51.100.254	255.255.255.0	198.51.100.1	198.51.100.254	254	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.156	192.0.2.200	44	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.201	192.0.2.254	53	View

Below the table, there are sections for "Added Network Resources", "VLANs", and "Network Endpoints", each with "Add", "Edit", and "Delete" icons. The "Added Network Resources" section shows a table with columns for Network Identifier, Default Route, Netmask, Start IP Address, End IP Address, Total IPs, Allocated IPs, Available IPs, and Details. The "VLANs" section shows a table with columns for VLAN ID and IPs Allocated to this VLAN. The "Network Endpoints" section shows a table with columns for Network Identifier, Default Route, Netmask, Start IP Address, End IP Address, Total IPs, Allocated IPs, Available IPs, and Details.

8. Add networks to the assistant.

See [“Set Up Networks” on page 29](#).

▼ Set Up Networks

After the assistant is initialized (see [“Initialize the Assistant” on page 27](#)) you add additional networks that are used by domains. In some cases, your Oracle representative performed this task during the initial configuration of SuperCluster.

You can use IP addresses that fall within the range of the preconfigured addresses as long as they do not overlap with addresses that are already allocated. For the minimum required IP addresses for each domain, see [“Minimum Number of IP and Alt MAC Addresses” on page 19](#).

After this task is complete, you can edit network parameters or additional network addresses. See [“Add or Edit a Network \(Administrators\)” on page 51](#).



Caution - Incorrect network parameters can result in problems that negatively affect your network environment. You might need to consult with your network administrator to obtain IP address information.

1. In the Network Resources screen, review the network parameters assigned to each network.

The networks in the top table are the SuperCluster networks that were created when SuperCluster was installed. You cannot modify these network parameters.

The networks in the bottom table are additional networks that you add with the assistant, and are used by domains.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The main content area displays a warning: "You must complete network initialisation before continuing". Below this is a table of "Imported Network Resources":

Network Identifier	Default Route	Netmask	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Total IPs	Details
Management Network	192.0.2.254	255.255.255.0	192.0.2.1	192.0.2.100	100	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.101	192.0.2.155	54	View
10Gb Client Network	198.51.100.254	255.255.255.0	198.51.100.1	198.51.100.254	254	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.156	192.0.2.200	44	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.201	192.0.2.254	53	View

Below the table are sections for "Added Network Resources", "VLANs", and "Network Endpoints", each with "Add", "Edit", and "Delete" options. The "Added Network Resources" and "VLANs" sections currently show "There are no added network resources configured" and "There are no VLAN tags configured" respectively.

SuperCluster supports these network types:

- Management network (for ease of network administration, configure all management networks on the same subnet.)
- 10Gb client network.
- Storage IB network.
- Exadata IB network.
- Versaboot network (supports iSCSI devices using IPoIB on systems such as SuperCluster M7). Each domain requires one Versaboot IP address.

- Standalone Exadata client network (on some SuperClusters).

You must create additional IP ranges for each network type. The additional networks you create provide the network resources to domains.

You can add multiple networks of the same type. For example, you can add multiple management networks, each with its own set of network parameters.

2. **Under Added Network Resources, click Add.**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Network Resources" with a sub-section "Add a New Network". The form contains the following fields and options:

- Network Identifier:** A dropdown menu currently set to "Management Network".
- Default Route:** An empty text input field.
- Netmask:** An empty text input field.
- Start IP Address:** An empty text input field with an information icon to its right.
- End IP Address:** An empty text input field with an information icon to its right.
- Apply to All:** A checked checkbox with an information icon to its right.
- Accessible Users:** A checkbox labeled "admin" with an information icon to its right.

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Add" and "Cancel".

3. **Define the parameters.**

- **Network Identifier** – Choose a network type.
- **Default Route** – Type the default route for this network. This parameter is not applicable to Storage IB, Exadata IB, or Versaboot network types.
- **Netmask** – Choose the netmask for this network.
- **Start IP Address** – Type the starting IP address.
- **End IP Address** – (Optional) Type the ending IP address. If you leave this blank, a full compliment of IP addresses are configured for this network.
- **Apply to All** – (Optional) Select the Apply to All check box if you want to associate all current and future SuperCluster users with this network. If you want to associate specific

users or groups with this network, do not select the Apply to All check box. Instead, select the specific user names.

4. **Click Add.**
5. **Repeat [Step 2](#) through [Step 4](#) until you have added IP addresses to all of the networks.**

For example:

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The navigation panel on the left includes options like IO Domains, Zones, Dedicated Domains, Recipes, Network Resources (selected), Physical Hosts, Queue, Users and Allowances, Settings, Management Agents, Health Monitor, System Log, and Profile. The main content area displays 'Network Resources' with two tables: 'Imported Network Resources' and 'Added Network Resources'. Below these is a 'VLANs' section.

Network Identifier	Default Route	Netmask	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Total IPs	Details
Management Network	192.0.2.254	255.255.255.0	192.0.2.1	192.0.2.100	100	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.101	192.0.2.155	54	View
10Gb Client Network	198.51.100.254	255.255.255.0	198.51.100.1	198.51.100.254	254	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.156	192.0.2.200	44	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	192.0.2.201	192.0.2.254	53	View

Network Identifier	Default Route	Netmask	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Total IPs	Allocated IPs	Available IPs	Details
Management Network	203.0.113.254	255.255.255.0	203.0.113.1	203.0.113.60	60	0	60	View
10Gb Client Network	203.0.113.254	255.255.255.0	203.0.113.61	203.0.113.81	20	0	20	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	203.0.113.82	203.0.113.102	20	0	20	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	203.0.113.103	203.0.113.123	20	0	20	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	203.0.113.134	203.0.113.134	10	0	10	View

VLANs

There are no VLAN tags configured

6. **To view all the IP addresses for a network, click View under Details.**
7. **To confirm that resources are available, select Physical Hosts in the navigation panel.**
See "[View System Resources](#)" on page 45.

8. **Consider your next action.**
 - Assign Fibre Channel addresses (Mandatory for some SuperClusters with Fibre Channel interfaces) – See "[Assign Fibre Channel Addresses](#)" on page 33.
 - Add VLAN tags – See "[Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)](#)" on page 56.
 - Configure security settings – See "[Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)](#)" on page 34.
 - Go to the Administration Task Overview – See "[Administrative Task Overview](#)" on page 20.

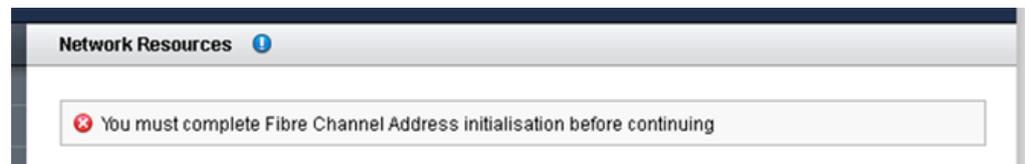
- Log out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 43.

▼ Assign Fibre Channel Addresses

As of SuperCluster software version 2.5, if SuperCluster includes Fibre Channel interfaces in Root Domains, you must assign a block of addresses to each interface. Prior to version 2.5, Fibre Channel addresses were automatically assigned by the Oracle Solaris OS.

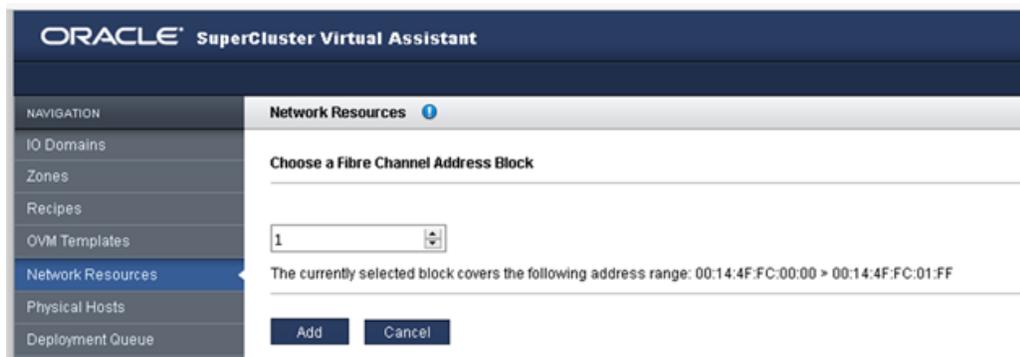
If you have more than one SuperCluster connected to the same SAN, this feature enables you to assign each SuperCluster to a different block of Fibre Channel addresses. It also enables the same Fibre Channel addresses to remain assigned to I/O Domains throughout operations such as freeze and thaw (see [“Relocating Domains with Freeze and Thaw”](#) on page 147).

1. **If you see this message, you must perform this task.**



2. **In the Network Resource page, at the top of the Added Network Resources table, click Add.**

The Fibre Channel address block assignment page is displayed.



3. **From the pull-down menu, select the block of addresses that you want to use for the Fibre Channel Node and port WWNs.**

You can select from 1-9 and the corresponding addresses are displayed.

4. **Click Add.**

5. **To view the Fibre Channel network details, click Details.**

6. **Consider your next action.**

- Configure security settings – See [“Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)” on page 34.](#)
- Go to the Administration Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
- Log out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43.](#)

▼ **Configure Security Settings (Administrators)**

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)

2. In the navigation panel, select Settings.

ORACLE SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

NAVIGATION

- IO Domains
- Zones
- Dedicated Domains
- Recipes
- Network Resources
- Physical Hosts
- Queue
- Users and Allowances
- Settings**
- Management Agents
- Health Monitor
- System Log
- Profile

Settings ⓘ

Software Settings

IP Address Assignment: ⓘ

Root Domain Groups: ⓘ

Hardware Settings

Exadata Storage Server Type:

Security Settings

Password Strength Level: ⓘ

Password Minimum Length: ⓘ

Maximum Login Attempts: ⓘ

Access Lock Threshold: ⓘ

3. Configure the security settings as required by your security policies.

Note - For details about the IP address settings, see [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36. For details about hardware settings, see [“Export an XML Configuration File”](#) on page 240.

Change any of these parameters:

- **Password Strength Level** – Choose one of the these values:
 - **1** – Requires users to specify passwords that meet the minimum password length.
 - **2** – Requires users to specify level 1 passwords, plus at least one uppercase and one lowercase letter.
 - **3** – Requires users to specify level 2 passwords, plus at least one number or special character.
- **Password Minimum Length** – Defines the minimum length of a password.

- **Maximum Login Attempts** – Maximum number of failed login attempts before access is temporarily restricted.
 - **Access Lock Threshold** – Time in minutes that access is restricted when the maximum login attempt threshold is exceeded.
4. **Click Save.**
- The changes take effect immediately.

Note - If you change the password rules later, the new rules are enforced on future password creations.

5. **Consider your next action.**
- Change the default admin password – See [“Change a User's Password \(Administrators\)” on page 71.](#)
 - Go to the Administration Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
 - Log out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43.](#)

▼ **Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned (Administrators)**

This feature is available in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant version 2.2.0.862 (or later). To check your version, see [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18.](#) This feature is supported on SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7.

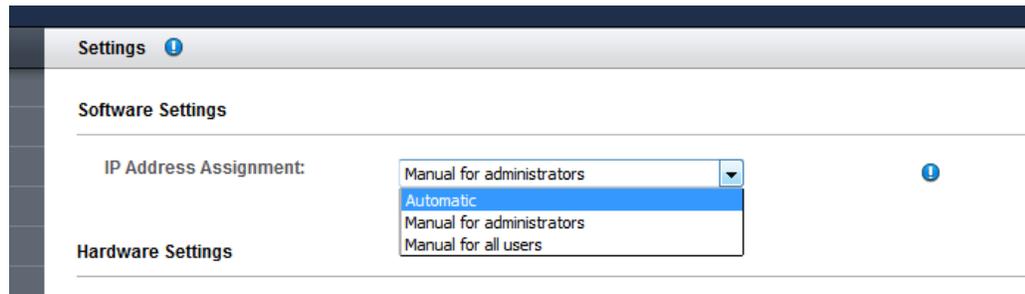
When a domain is created, the assistant automatically assigns IP addresses to the management, 10GbE client, IB, and Versaboot (if applicable) networks. You can configure the assistant to allow the person creating the domain to select specific IP addresses from a specific subnet for the management and client networks:

- **Automatic** – (Default) The assistant automatically assigns IP addresses to all domain networks. The IP addresses assigned are the next available addresses from the IP addresses pool. See [“Set Up Networks” on page 29](#) and [“Add or Edit a Network \(Administrators\)” on page 51.](#)
- **Manual for administrators** – During domain creation, administrators choose specific IP addresses. For non-administrators, the IP addresses are automatically assigned.
- **Manual for all users** – During domain creation, all users choose specific IP addresses.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Settings.**

Note - For details about the hardware settings, see [“Export an XML Configuration File”](#) on page 240. For details about security settings, see [“Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 34.

3. **Under IP Address Assignment, select one of these options.**

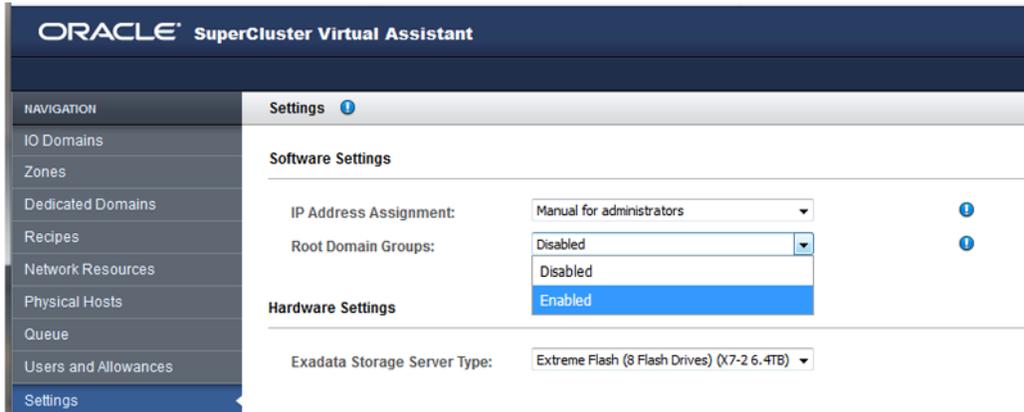


4. **Click Save.**
The new IP address assignment configuration applies to future domains.

▼ Enable or Disable Root Domain Groups (Administrators)

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Settings.**

3. In the Root Domain Groups drop-down menu, select enable or disable.



4. Click Save.

If you enabled root domain groups, the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant displays the Physical Hosts page, prompting you to create at least one root domain group per physical host. In this case, go to [“Create Root Domain Groups \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 38.

▼ Create Root Domain Groups (Administrators)

1. If not already displayed, access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant → Physical Hosts page.

The List of Physical Hosts only lists the PDomains that have root domains. If you want more details about the root domains on your system, display the Dedicated Domains page.

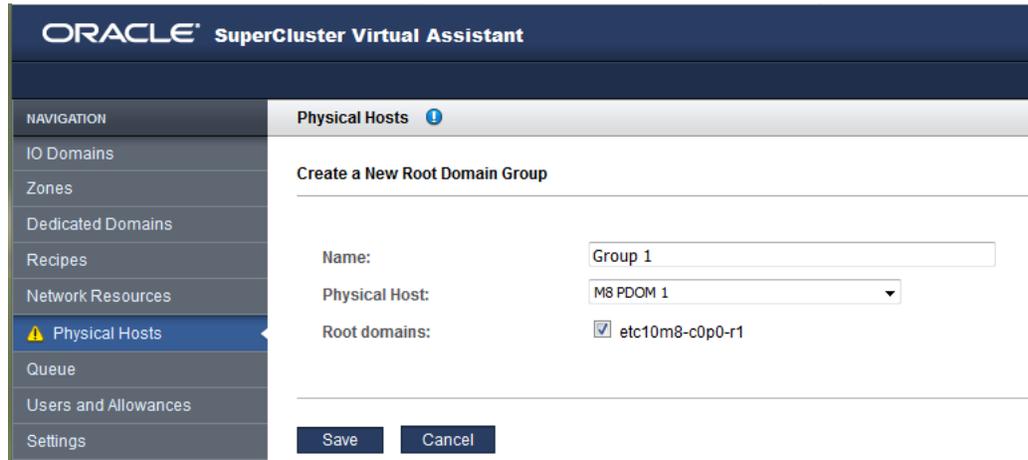
The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The top navigation bar includes 'About', 'Refresh', and 'Logout' buttons, along with user information: 'User: admin > Role: Administrator > Language: en'. The left sidebar contains a 'NAVIGATION' menu with items like 'IO Domains', 'Zones', 'Dedicated Domains', 'Recipes', 'Network Resources', 'Physical Hosts' (highlighted), 'Queue', 'Users and Allowances', 'Settings', 'Management Agents', 'Health Monitor', 'System Log', and 'Profile'. The main content area is titled 'Physical Hosts' and contains a warning message: 'Root Domain Group selection was enabled. Certain features will be restricted until all Root Domains have been distributed'. Below this is a table titled 'List of Physical Hosts' with columns for Physical Host, Root Domain Groups, Cores, Memory, IB Interfaces, 10Gb Interfaces, and Details. The table lists three PDOMs: M8 PDOM 1, M8 PDOM 3, and M8 PDOM 4. Below the table is another section titled 'List of Root Domain Groups' with 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' icons. A table below this section shows that there are no Root Domain Groups registered.

Physical Host	Root Domain Groups	Cores	Memory	IB Interfaces	10Gb Interfaces	Details
M8 PDOM 1		Total: 68 Allocated: 0 Available: 68	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View
M8 PDOM 3		Total: 54 Allocated: 0 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View
M8 PDOM 4		Total: 54 Allocated: 0 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View

Root Domain Group	Physical Host	Root Domains	Cores	Memory	IB Interfaces	10Gb Interfaces	Details
There are no Root Domain Groups registered							

2. Under List of Root Domain Groups, click Add.

3. **Configure the root domain group.**



Configure these parameters:

- **Name** – Specify a descriptive name for this group.
- **Physical Host** – Select the physical host that has the network resources that you want associated with this group.
- **Root domains** – Select one or more root domains.

4. **Click Save.**

The new root domain group is displayed in the Physical Hosts page.

5. **Repeat this procedure for until the warning symbol is no longer displayed in the side panel.**

Once all the root domains are grouped, the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant allows you to create I/O Domains.

Accessing the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

These topics describe how to access the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

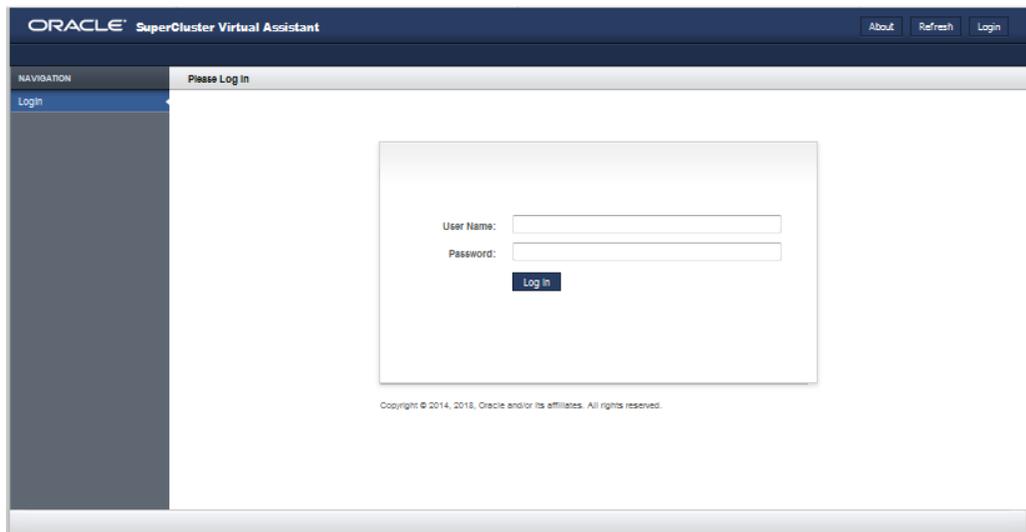
- [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#)
- [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43](#)
- [“Assistant Tool Tips” on page 43](#)

▼ **Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant**

1. **Open a browser on a system that has network access to SuperCluster.**
2. **Enter this URL in the address field and press Return.**

`https://compute_node_1-Control_dom:8000`

Replace *compute_node_1-Control_dom* with the first compute node's control domain name or IP address.



3. Log in as admin or as a user.

If you are accessing the assistant for the first time, use these initial credentials:

- User name – **admin**
- Password – **welcome1**

If this is the first time that the assistant is accessed, you must initialize the assistant. See [“Initialize the Assistant” on page 27](#).

Note - If you forgot your password, and you have administrator privileges, you can reset it. See [“Reset a User's Password \(Administrators\)” on page 73](#). If you do not have administrator privileges, request a reset. See [“Request a Password Reset” on page 70](#).

4. (Optional) Bookmark the login page.

5. Consider your next action.

- Review tool tips. – See [“Assistant Tool Tips” on page 43](#).
- Change user passwords – See [“Change a User's Password \(Administrators\)” on page 71](#).

- Log out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43.](#)

▼ Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

- From any screen, click Logout (upper right corner).

Assistant Tool Tips

Goal	Action
Access contextual online help.	Click the blue information icon: 
Exit a screen.	Perform one of these actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Click any tab under Navigation. ■ Click Logout.
Refresh data on the screen.	Click Refresh.
Sort table rows based on data in a column.	Click the small arrow next to the column heading.
View notices.	Click About.

Managing Resources and Networks

Use these topics to view and manage CPU, memory, network, and storage resources.

For more information about planning I/O Domains that will use these resources, see [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91](#).

- [“View System Resources” on page 45](#)
- [“View Dedicated Domain Resources \(Administrators\)” on page 48](#)
- [“View Network Resources” on page 48](#)
- [“Add or Edit a Network \(Administrators\)” on page 51](#)
- [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)” on page 53](#)
- [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)
- [“Delete a VLAN Tag \(Administrators\)” on page 57](#)
- [“Support for Fibre Channel Interfaces in Domains” on page 58](#)
- [“Domain Storage Resources” on page 58](#)
- [“Configure the Assistant With Added Storage Servers \(Administrators\)” on page 59](#)

▼ View System Resources

Use this procedure to view the resources that are available for domains. Both administrators and users can perform this task.

The Physical Hosts screen provides an overview of resources and two levels of additional resource details (administrators only): one at the compute node level, and one at the Root Domain level.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Physical Hosts.**
An overview of resources is displayed, including the total, allocated, and available amount of cores, memory, IB interfaces, and 10GbE interfaces.

Note - Non-administrators do not have access the physical host details view.

Physical Host	Root Domains	Cores	Memory	IB Interfaces	10Gb Interfaces	Details
M8 PDOM 1	etc10m8-c0p0-r1	Total: 68 Allocated: 0 Available: 68	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View
M8 PDOM 3	etc10m8-c1p0-r1	Total: 54 Allocated: 0 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View
M8 PDOM 4	etc10m8-c1p1-r1	Total: 54 Allocated: 0 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	View

3. (Administrators only) View resource details for a node by clicking View in the Details column.

Nodes with multiple Root Domains pool together all of the CPU and memory resources, making them available to domains. A domain can use more CPU and memory resources than are available from a single Root Domain. The network resources (IB and 10GbE interfaces) are not pooled together. A domain receives all of its network resources from a single Root Domain.

You can see the resources on a per Root Domain basis. This is helpful for planning network resource allocations.

Hostname	Cores	Memory	IB Interfaces	10Gb Interfaces	IO Domains	Details
etc10m8-c0p0-r1	Total: 68 Allocated: 0 Available: 68	Total: 928 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	0	View

4. **(Administrators only) View resource details for a Root Domain by clicking View in the Details column.**

The assistant displays details such as the exact cores and memory segments that are associated with this Root Domain. The Dependent I/O Domains table lists the domains that use resources from this Root Domain. The log at the bottom of the screen displays details such as which VFs are associated with PFs.

Physical Hosts ⓘ

Root Domain Details

[General Info](#)
[Resources](#)
[Assignable Resources](#)
[Dependent I/O Domains](#)
[Log](#)

General Info

Type:	Root Domain
Physical Host:	M8 PDOM 1
Domain Name:	example.com
Name Servers:	203.0.113.12
Time Servers:	203.0.113.13
Time Zone:	America/Los_Angeles

Primary Interface:	Management Interface
Primary Hostname:	etc10m8-c0p0-r1
Management Hostname:	etc10m8-c0p0-r1
Management IP:	.203
Storage IB Hostname:	etc10m8-c0p0-r1-storIB
Storage IB IP:	.5
Versaboot Hostnames:	etc10m8-c0p0-r1-storvb1, etc10m8-c0p0-r1-storvb2
Versaboot IPs:	.7, .8

Resources ⤴

Number of Cores:	2
Cores:	250, 251
Memory:	30 GB
Memory Segments:	196609G:15360M, 197552G:15616M

Assignable Resources ⤴

Number of Cores:	0 allocated of 68 cores
Cores Allocated:	
Cores Available:	192, 193, 194, 195, 200, 201, 202, 203, 208, 209, 210, 211, 216, 217, 218, 219, 224, 225, 226, 227, 232, 233, 234, 235, 240, 241, 242, 243, 248, 249, 16, 17, 18, 19, 24, 25, 26, 27, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 43, 48, 49, 50, 51, 56, 57, 58, 59, 98, 99, 104, 105, 106, 107, 112, 113, 114, 115, 120, 121, 122, 123
Memory:	0 GB allocated of 928 GB
Memory Segments Allocated:	
Memory Segments Available:	196624G:16G, 196640G:16G, 196656G:16G, 196672G:16G, 196688G:16G, 196704G:16G, 196720G:16G, 196736G:16G, 196752G:16G, 196768G:16G, 196784G:16G, 196800G:16G, 196816G:16G, 196832G:16G,

5. **Consider your next action.**

- View dedicated domain resources – See [“View Dedicated Domain Resources \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 48.

- View network resources – See “[View Network Resources](#)” on page 48.
- Go to the Administration Task Overview – See “[Administrative Task Overview](#)” on page 20.

▼ View Dedicated Domain Resources (Administrators)

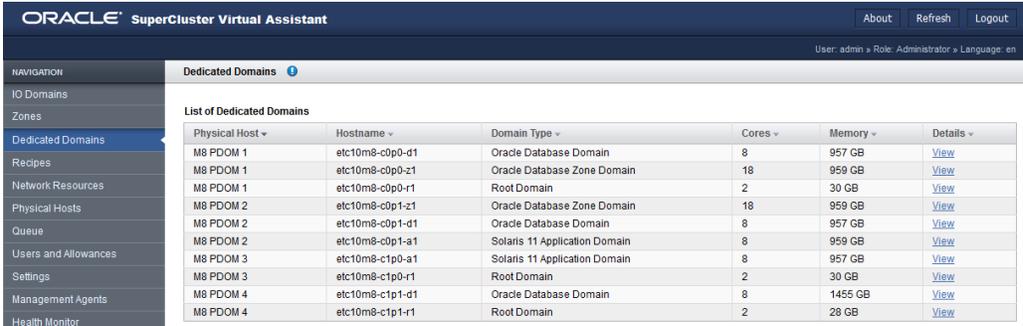
1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.

2. In the navigation panel, select Dedicated Domains.

An overview of the dedicated domains and root domains is displayed.

Click on a View link to see additional details about a particular domain. Details for a root domain include information about any dependent I/O Domains and activity logs.



Physical Host	Hostname	Domain Type	Cores	Memory	Details
M8 PDOM 1	etc10m8-c0p0-d1	Oracle Database Domain	8	957 GB	View
M8 PDOM 1	etc10m8-c0p0-z1	Oracle Database Zone Domain	18	959 GB	View
M8 PDOM 1	etc10m8-c0p0-r1	Root Domain	2	30 GB	View
M8 PDOM 2	etc10m8-c0p1-z1	Oracle Database Zone Domain	18	959 GB	View
M8 PDOM 2	etc10m8-c0p1-d1	Oracle Database Domain	8	957 GB	View
M8 PDOM 2	etc10m8-c0p1-a1	Solaris 11 Application Domain	8	959 GB	View
M8 PDOM 3	etc10m8-c1p0-a1	Solaris 11 Application Domain	8	957 GB	View
M8 PDOM 3	etc10m8-c1p0-r1	Root Domain	2	30 GB	View
M8 PDOM 4	etc10m8-c1p1-d1	Oracle Database Domain	8	1455 GB	View
M8 PDOM 4	etc10m8-c1p1-r1	Root Domain	2	28 GB	View

3. Consider your next action.

- View network resources – See “[View Network Resources](#)” on page 48.
- Go to the Administration Task Overview – See “[Administrative Task Overview](#)” on page 20.

▼ View Network Resources

Use this procedure to identify the network resources and VLAN tags for each network. Both administrators and users can perform this task.

Note - Fibre channel interfaces are supported starting with Super Cluster Virtual Assistant version 2.2.0.873. See “[Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version](#)” on page 18, “[Assign Fibre Channel Addresses](#)” on page 33 and “[Support for Fibre Channel Interfaces in Domains](#)” on page 58.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Network Resources.**

Tip - Only administrators have access to the Add and Edit buttons.

Network Resources ⓘ

Imported Network Resources

Network Identifier ▾	Default Route ▾	Netmask ▾	Start IP Address ▾	End IP Address ▾	Total IPs ▾	Details
Management Network	9.96.1	255.255.240.0	9.102.1	9.102.31	31	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	8.168.28.1	8.28.10	10	View
10Gb Client Network	9.112.1	255.255.240.0	9.129.115.1	9.115.3	3	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	8.68.24.1	8.24.18	18	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	8.68.10.1	8.10.6	6	View

Added Network Resources

➕ Add ✎ Edit ✖ Delete

Network Identifier ▾	Default Route ▾	Netmask ▾	Start IP Address ▾	End IP Address ▾	Total IPs ▾	Allocated IPs ▾	Available IPs ▾	Details
Management Network	9.96.1	255.255.240.0	9.102.35	9.102.100	66	14	52	View
10Gb Client Network	9.112.1	255.255.240.0	9.115.20	9.115.59	40	25	15	View
Storage Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	8.28.15	8.28.49	35	14	21	View
Exadata Infiniband Network		255.255.252.0	8.10.20	8.10.59	40	6	34	View
Versaboot Network		255.255.252.0	8.4.25	8.24.64	40	30	10	View
10Gb Client Network	9.1.1	255.255.255.0	9.1.1	9.254.253	253	18	235	View
10Gb Client Network	9.254	255.255.255.0	9.1	9.40	40	0	40	View
10Gb Client Network	9.1	255.255.255.0	9.1	9.100	99	0	99	View

VLANs

➕ Add ✎ Edit ✖ Delete

VLAN ID ▾	IPs Allocated to this VLAN ▾	Details ▾
123	13	View
456	11	View

Network Endpoints

➕ Add ✎ Edit ✖ Delete

Memorable Name	Connected Port-Pairs	Connected Networks
sw1c1	MS P0011 - Port Pair 2	10Gb Client Network 9.1/255.255.255.0

3. **Review the network parameters assigned to each network.**

The networks listed in the top table are the initial networks that were created when SuperCluster was installed. You cannot change these networks.

The second table displays the additional networks that were added to provide network resources for I/O Domains. Users with the administrator role can add to and edit these networks. See [“Add or Edit a Network \(Administrators\)” on page 51](#).

Multiple networks can exist for a given network type. For example, you can configure two management and two client networks.

4. To view all the IP addresses for a network, click View in the Details column.

Network Resources	
Network Details	
General Info List of IP Addresses	
General Info	
Network Name:	Management Network
Starting Address:	68.2.1
End Address:	68.2.254
Netmask:	255.255.255.0
Default Route:	68.2.254
Total IPs:	30
Owner:	
Available To:	All Users
List of IP Addresses	
Hostname ▾	IP Address ▾
etc2m7-rootadm0101	68.2.1
etc2m7-rootadm0102	68.2.2
etc2m7-rootadm0103	68.2.3
etc2m7-rootadm0201	68.2.4
etc2m7-rootadm0202	68.2.5
etc2m7-rootadm0203	68.2.6
etc2m7-celadm01	68.2.7
etc2m7-celadm02	68.2.8
etc2m7-celadm03	68.2.9
etc2m7-h1-storadm	68.2.10
etc2m7-h2-storadm	68.2.11
etc2m7-sw-adm0	68.2.12

5. Consider your next action.

- Add or edit a network – See [“Add or Edit a Network \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 51.
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview”](#) on page 20.
- Add users – See [“Managing User Accounts”](#) on page 61.

▼ Add or Edit a Network (Administrators)

Use this procedure to add a network or edit a network. Only users with the administrator role can add or edit networks.

You might need to add networks and IP addresses to support future domains. Refer to your configuration worksheets for network planning details.



Caution - Incorrect network parameters can result in problems that affect your network environment.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
- 2. In the navigation panel, select Network Resources.**

3. Click Add.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Network Resources" with a sub-header "Add a New Network". The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Network Identifier:** A dropdown menu with "Management Network" selected.
- Default Route:** A text input field.
- Netmask:** A text input field.
- Start IP Address:** A text input field with an information icon (i) to its right.
- End IP Address:** A text input field with an information icon (i) to its right.
- Apply to All:** A checked checkbox.
- Accessible Users:** A checkbox labeled "admin" with an information icon (i) to its right.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Add" and "Cancel".

4. Define the parameters and click Add.

- **Network identifier** – Choose a network type.
- **Default Route** – Type the default route for this network. This parameter is not applicable to Storage IB, Exadata IB, or Versaboot network types.
- **Netmask** – Type the netmask for this network.
- **Start IP Address** – Type the starting IP address.
- **End IP Address** – (Optional) Type the ending IP address. If you leave this blank, a full complement of IP addresses are configured for this network.
- **Apply to All** – (Optional) Select the Apply to All check box if you want to associate all current and future SuperCluster users with this network. If you want to associate specific users or groups with this network, do not select the Apply to All check box. Instead, select the specific user names.

5. If you need to change parameters for an existing network, select the network and click Edit.

6. In the Edit Network screen, change parameters as needed, and click Save.

7. Consider your next action.

- Create and deploy I/O Domains – See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91.](#)
- Add users – See [“Managing User Accounts” on page 61.](#)
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)

▼ Configure Port-Paired Networks (Administrators)

This procedure describes how to configure quad-port 10 GbE NIC port pairs to specific network endpoints.

Note - Alternatively for SuperCluster version 3.0 (or later), you can control which network endpoints are assigned to I/O Domains by creating root domain groups (see [“Enable or Disable Root Domain Groups \(Administrators\)” on page 37.](#))

Each quad-port NIC provides four 10 GbE ports through a spitter cable. The ports are paired together, meaning that the first two ports are port pair 1, the second two ports are port pair 2.

Port pair 1 is usually used as the default client access network.

Port pair 2 is not enabled by default, but it can be added as an additional network resource, providing another interface to the same network, or be configured as a different network, providing network isolation.

For every quad-port NIC, two port pairs can be enabled by Oracle personnel. You can choose exactly which client access facility network each port pair connects to. Then, in the assistant, you configure the port pair's network endpoints so that you can assign the port pair network resources to I/O Domains.

After you configure the second port for use, port pair 2 is displayed as a selectable interface when you create I/O Domains.

Prerequisites

- Port pairs can only be configured on SuperClusters that have the quad-port 10GbE NIC installed.

Note - SuperCluster M8 ships with this NIC by default. SuperCluster M7, by default, ships with the dual-port 10GbE NIC which does not support the port-pair feature.

- Oracle personnel must enable the port pairing feature on SuperCluster. This usually happens during the SuperCluster installation, but Oracle personnel can enable the feature later on qualifying SuperClusters with software v2.5 or later.
- A physical connection must be made, connecting the port pair connectors to the appropriate facility network switch.
- You must have the administrator role to perform this task.



Caution - Incorrect network parameters can result in problems that affect your network environment.

1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.

2. In the navigation panel, select Network Resources.

3. Check if the system is ready to configure port pairs.

If you see a table titled **Network Endpoints**, port pair configuration is enabled, and you can continue to configure port pairs. If you do not see this table, Oracle personnel have not enabled this feature. Contact your Oracle representative.



4. In the Network Endpoints Table, click Add.

The Create Network Endpoint menu is displayed.

5. **Define the parameters and click Add.**

Note - Complete this menu for one connected network at a time. Select one or more port pairs for the one network. If you want to configure other networks to port pairs, repeat this procedure.

- **Memorable Name** – Assign a name for this network configuration. The name is later displayed as a network resource that can be assigned to I/O Domains. Specify a name that identifies the network to which the port pairs will be associated.
- **Connected Port-Pairs** – Select the port pairs that you want associated with a given 10 GbE network endpoint. You can select one or more port pairs.
- **Connected Networks** – Select the network you want associated with the port pairs. Only select one network.

6. **Click Save.**

The port pairs and associated network endpoints are displayed in the Network Resources → Network Endpoints table.

The new port pair network resource is available to be assigned to I/O Domains.

Network Endpoints

[Add](#)
[Edit](#)
[Delete](#)

Memorable Name	Connected Port-Pairs	Connected Networks
swtci1	M8 PDOM 1 - Port Pair 2	10Gb Client Network : 91.81.255.255/24

7. **If you want to assign other port pairs to a network endpoint, repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 6](#).**
8. **Consider your next action.**
 - Create and deploy I/O Domains – See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91](#).
 - Add a VLAN tag – See [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#).
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20](#).

▼ Add VLAN Tags (Administrators)

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Network Resources.**
The VLANs section displays existing VLAN tags.
3. **In the VLANs section, click Add.**
4. **Enter a VLAN tag number between 1 and 4095.**
5. **Determine if you want all SuperCluster users or just a group of users to have access to this virtual network.**
 - If you want to associate all current and future SuperCluster users with this network, select the Apply to All check box.
 - If you want to associate specific users or groups with this network, do not select the Apply to All check box. Instead, select the specific user names or roles.

- Network Resources** ⓘ

Add a New VLAN Tag

VLAN Tag: ⓘ

Apply to All: ⓘ

Applicable Users:

admin
user01

 ⓘ

6. Click Add (or Save).

The new VLAN tag now appears in the VLANs section.

7. Consider your next action.

- View network resources – See [“View Network Resources” on page 48.](#)
- Delete a VLAN tag – See [“Delete a VLAN Tag \(Administrators\)” on page 57.](#)

▼ Delete a VLAN Tag (Administrators)

The ability to delete a VLAN tag is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.

When you remove a VLAN tag, you are removing this network resource. Only VLAN tags with no I/O Domains associated with them can be deleted.

Users with the administrator role can add and remove VLAN tags.

1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)

2. In the navigation panel, select Network Resources.

3. In the VLANs section, select the row with the VLAN tag you want to delete.

4. **Click Delete.**
5. **Consider your next action.**
 - View network resources – See [“View Network Resources” on page 48.](#)
 - Add a VLAN tag – See [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56.](#)

Support for Fibre Channel Interfaces in Domains

Fibre channel interfaces are supported in domains that use at least SuperCluster Virtual Assistant version 2.2.0.873. See [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18.](#)

As of SuperCluster software version 2.5, if SuperCluster includes Fibre Channel interfaces in Root Domains, you must assign a block of addresses to each interface. See [“Assign Fibre Channel Addresses” on page 33.](#)

There are additional requirements for the root domain OS levels, system firmware versions, and fibre channel firmware versions. These details are available in MOS Doc ID 2180265.1, which is available at My Oracle Support (<https://support.oracle.com>).

Domain Storage Resources

When you configure an domain, iSCSI LUN resources are automatically allocated. The assistant starts with a predefined amount of storage, then calculates additional resources for swap and dump based on the chosen CPU and memory resources.

If you deploy a domain using an OVM template, the template determines the amount of allocated iSCSI LUN resources.

For non OVM template-based Domains, the assistant approximately allocates these pool resources, based on the type of domain and the version of the assistant:

Assistant Version	Database Domains	Application Domains
Branch 2.1.0.813 (or later)	150 GB	100 GB
Branches prior to 2.1.0.813	70 GB	50 GB

Tip - To determine the assistant version, see [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#).

Related Information

- [“Domain Requirements” on page 19](#)
- [“Configure the Assistant With Added Storage Servers \(Administrators\)” on page 59](#)

▼ **Configure the Assistant With Added Storage Servers (Administrators)**

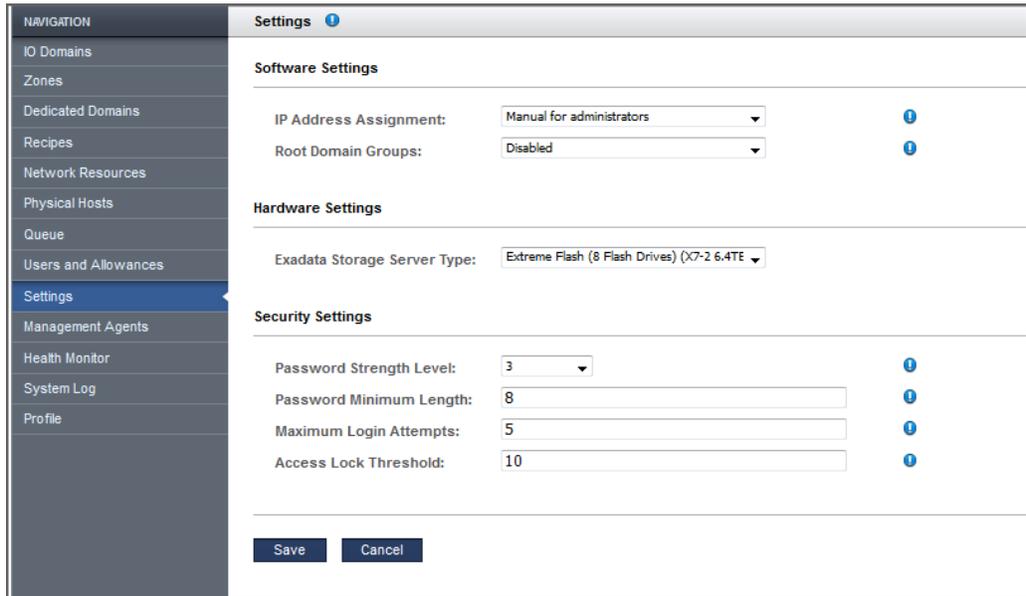
If additional storage servers were added to the system, perform these steps before you export an XML Configuration File for JOC (used to create Database I/O Domains). For further details, see [“Export an XML Configuration File” on page 240](#).

Only users with the administrator role can perform this task.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).

2. In the navigation panel, select Settings.



3. Under Hardware Settings, select the storage server type.

Note - For details about IP address settings, see [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#). For more information about security settings, see [“Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)” on page 34](#).

4. Click Save.

The new storage server type appears in the SuperCluster system.

5. Consider your next action.

- Add users – See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)” on page 64](#).

Managing User Accounts

You must have administrator privileges to perform most of these procedures. Use these topics to manage I/O Domain user accounts.

Description	Links
Learn about user roles.	“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61
Plan users and the amount of resources available for each user.	“Plan Domain Users and Resource Allocations” on page 62 “Domain Users Worksheet” on page 63 “View Users” on page 64
Add a user.	“Add a User (Administrators)” on page 64 “Allocate Resources to a User (Administrators)” on page 66
View resource allowances, Manage user passwords.	“View Resource Allowances” on page 68 “Change Your Password” on page 69 “Request a Password Reset” on page 70 “Change a User's Password (Administrators)” on page 71 “Reset a User's Password (Administrators)” on page 73
Change a user's email or role.	“Edit a User's Email Address or Role (Administrators)” on page 75
Delete a user.	“Delete a User (Administrators)” on page 76

User Roles and Privileges

By default, the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant provides an admin user account with administrator privileges.

If you choose to create additional users, you assign each user with either a *user* or *administrator* role. See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)” on page 64](#).

- **User role** – Can perform these actions within the resources assigned to the user:
 - Create, edit, and delete their own domains.
 - Create, edit, and delete their own resource and network recipes.
 - Use any recipes for which the user has permissions to use.
 - View physical hosts, network information, and the queue.
 - Change their password and email address.
- **Administrator role** – Can perform all user actions and these additional actions:
 - Create, edit, and delete users and their passwords.
 - Allocate resources to users and manage user allowances.
 - Create, edit, and delete all recipes.
 - Edit and add network resources.
 - Create, edit, and delete all domains.
 - Reset any user's password.

▼ Plan Domain Users and Resource Allocations

By default, the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant is configured with one user called `admin` with administrative privileges.

If you choose, you can add additional users assigned with either a regular user role or the administrator role.

Regular users have access to the assistant and can manage their own recipes and domains. Users with the administrator role have full administrative privileges. See [“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61](#).

Use this procedure with the user configuration worksheet. See [“Domain Users Worksheet” on page 63](#).

1. Determine I/O Domain users and roles.

Assign each new user these attributes:

- Unique name and password.
- Either administrator or user role.

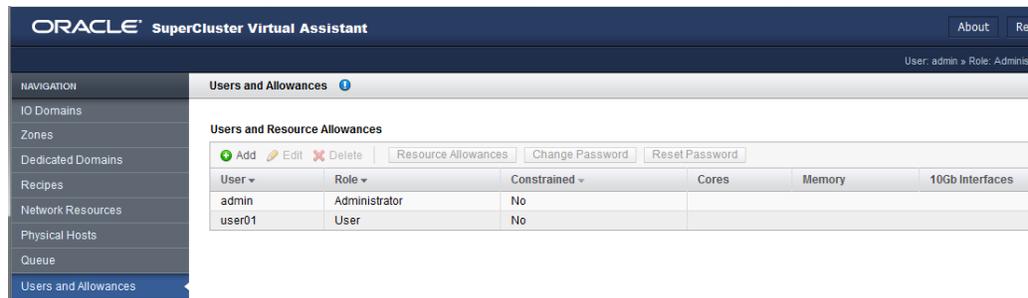
2. Determine the resource allocation for each user.

When you configure users, you can allocate resource limits in these ways:

▼ View Users

You must have administrator privileges to perform this task.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**



3. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the next configuration task – See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 64.
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview”](#) on page 20.

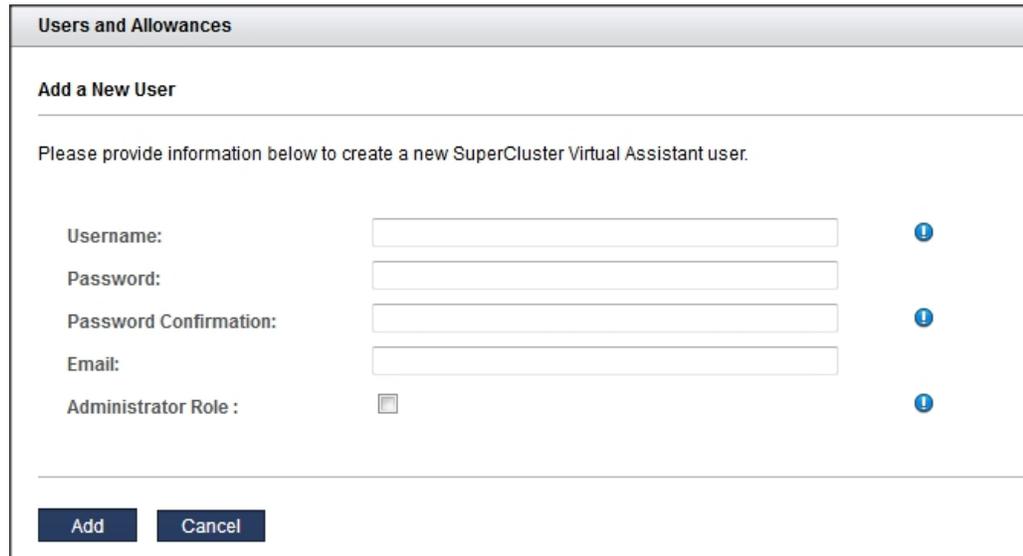
▼ Add a User (Administrators)

Use this procedure to add SuperCluster Virtual Assistant users.

You must have administrator privileges to perform this task. For information on planning users see [“Plan Domain Users and Resource Allocations”](#) on page 62. If you completed the I/O Domain Users Worksheet, use the information in the worksheet to complete this procedure. See [“Domain Users Worksheet”](#) on page 63.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**

3. Click Add User.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Users and Allowances" with a sub-header "Add a New User". Below the sub-header is a message: "Please provide information below to create a new SuperCluster Virtual Assistant user." The form contains five fields: "Username:" with a text input field and a blue information icon; "Password:" with a text input field; "Password Confirmation:" with a text input field and a blue information icon; "Email:" with a text input field; and "Administrator Role:" with a checkbox and a blue information icon. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Add" and "Cancel".

4. Enter this information:

- **User name** – The name for this new user.
- **Password** – The password the user uses to log into the assistant.
- **Password confirmation** – The password the user uses to log into the assistant.
- **Email** – Email address for the new user.
- **Administration role** – Select if you want this user to have administrator privileges. See [“User Roles and Privileges” on page 61.](#)

5. Click Add.

6. Consider your next action.

- Go to the next configuration task – See [“Allocate Resources to a User \(Administrators\)” on page 66.](#)
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)

▼ Allocate Resources to a User (Administrators)

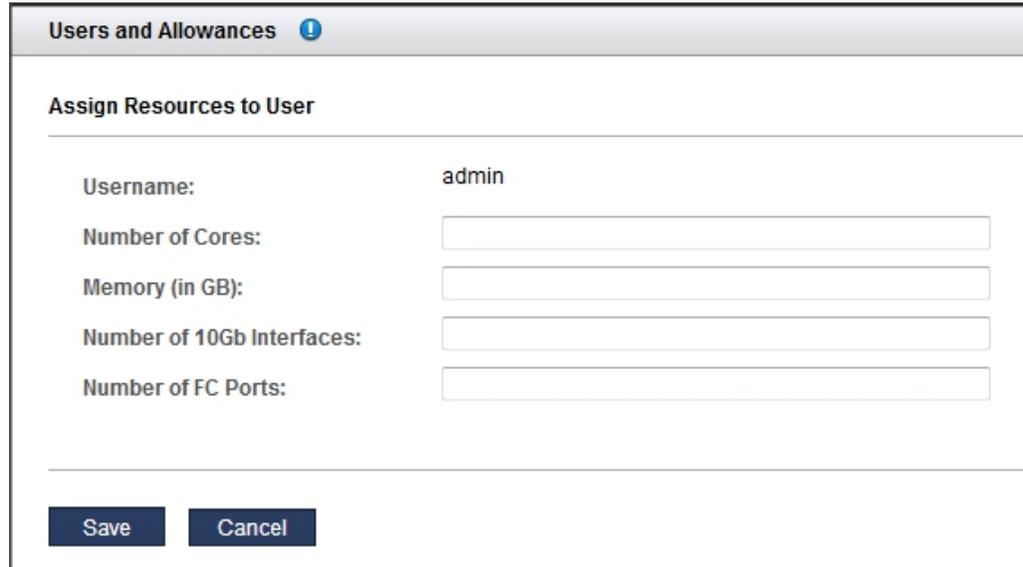
You must have administrator privileges to perform this task.

Use this procedure to assign upper limit resources to users. This is an upper limit, and not a set of reserved resources or quota. If you don't assign upper limits, the user is categorized as *unconstrained*, meaning the user is only limited by the amount of available resources.

For information on planning users see [“Plan Domain Users and Resource Allocations” on page 62](#). If you completed the I/O Domain Users Worksheet, use the information in the worksheet to complete this procedure. See [“Domain Users Worksheet” on page 63](#).

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
- 2. (Optional) Create the user account.**
See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)” on page 64](#).
- 3. In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**
- 4. Select the user for which you want to allocate resources.**

5. **Click Resource Allowances.**



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Users and Allowances" with a sub-section "Assign Resources to User". The "Username" field is populated with "admin". Below it are four empty input fields for "Number of Cores", "Memory (in GB)", "Number of 10Gb Interfaces", and "Number of FC Ports". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

6. **Enter this information.**

Allocate resources carefully. The more 10GbE interfaces the user configures, the more IP addresses are required.

- **Number of CPU cores** – The maximum number of cores that you want to allocate to this user.
- **Amount of Memory in GB** – The maximum amount of memory, in GB, that you want to allocate to this user.
- **Number of 10Gb Interfaces** – The maximum number of 10GbE interfaces that you want to allocate to this user.
- **Number of FC VFs** – (If present) The maximum number of fibre channel VFs that this user can consume.

Note - If resources were previously assigned, you can click Clear to remove all of the resource limitations.

7. **Click Save.**

The user's resource allowances are displayed in the Users and Allowances screen.

8. Consider your next action.

- Go to the next configuration section – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates”](#) on page 79.
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview”](#) on page 20.
- Change user passwords – See [“Change a User's Password \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 71.

▼ View Resource Allowances

The assistant administrators can assign an upper limit of resources for each user. Use this procedure to view information about allocated, used, and remaining resources.

Administrators can view resource allowances for any user. Non-administrator users can only view their own allowances.

Note - If your user account is configured without resource constraints, you can use any of the available resources.

1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.

2. In the navigation panel, select Profile.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The navigation panel on the left has 'Profile' selected. The main content area displays the user's profile details and resource allowances.

My Details

Username	Email	Role	IO Domains	Zones	Resource Recipes	Network Recipes	Queued
admin	example@example.com	Administrator	4	1	8	1	0

My Resource Allowances

Allowance	Total	Used	Available
No resource allowances (unconstrained)			

3. Consider your next action.

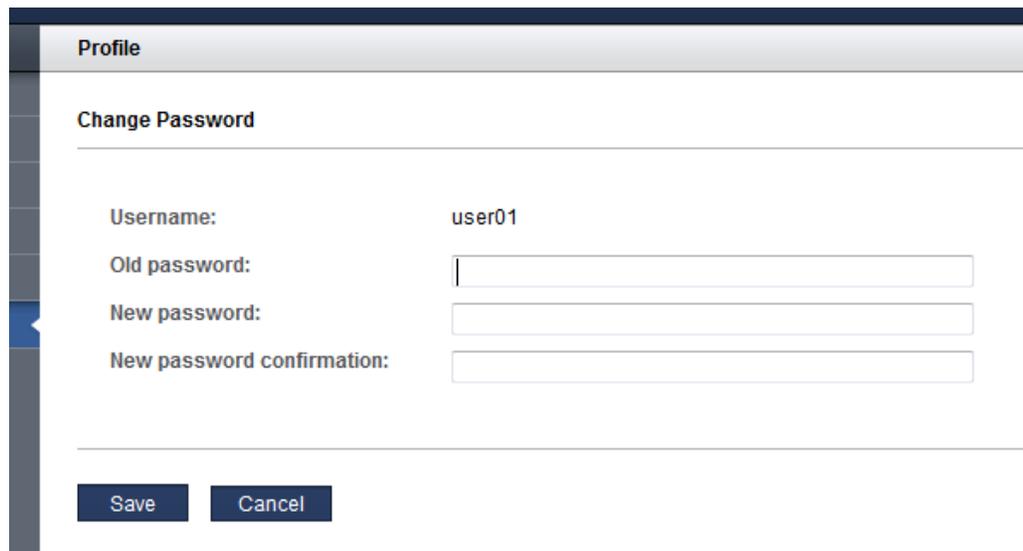
- View system resources. – See [“View System Resources”](#) on page 45.
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview”](#) on page 20.

▼ Change Your Password

User passwords are initially set when the user account is created. The assistant administrator provides you with your initial password. You can use this procedure to change your password anytime after you receive your initial password.

Note - If you forgot your password, the assistant administrator can initiate a password reset. See [“Request a Password Reset”](#) on page 70.

1. **Log in as the user for which the password change is required.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Profile.**
3. **Click Change Password.**



The screenshot shows a web interface for changing a password. At the top, there is a header labeled "Profile". Below it, the section "Change Password" is visible. The form contains the following fields:

- Username:** user01
- Old password:** [Text input field]
- New password:** [Text input field]
- New password confirmation:** [Text input field]

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

4. **Enter the old password, new password, and password confirmation.**
5. **Click Save.**
6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Reset your password – See [“Request a Password Reset”](#) on page 70.

▼ **Request a Password Reset**

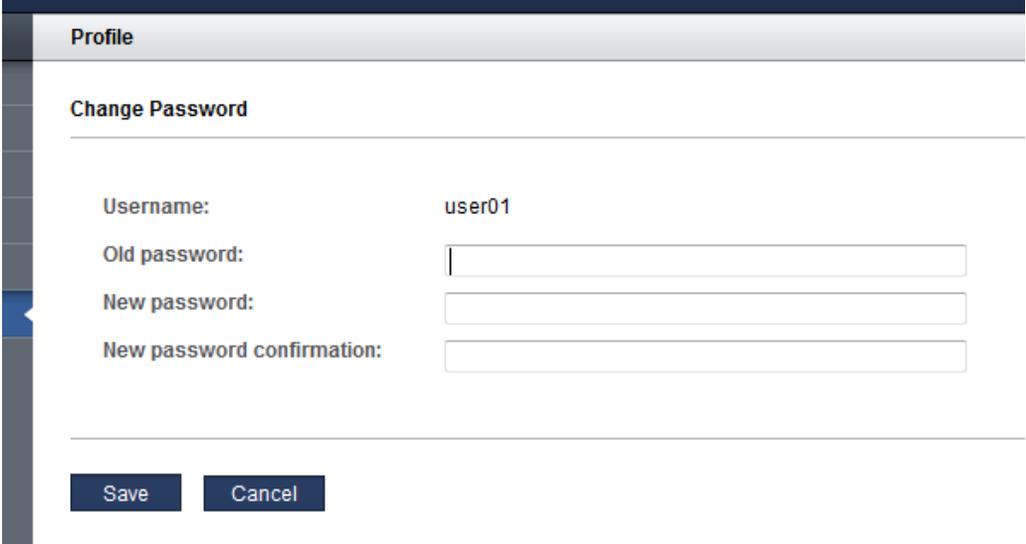
If you forget your password, the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant administrator can initiate a password reset for you. The assistant sends you email with a link that enables you to reset your password. The link is only valid for 24 hours.

Only the administrator can initiate a password reset or change your email address in the assistant.

Note - The assistant must have a valid email address before a password reset can be performed.

1. **Contact the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant administrator to request a password reset.**
2. **When you receive the `do_not_reply` email, click the link in the email.**

The Password Reset screen is displayed in the browser.



The screenshot shows a web interface for changing a user's password. At the top, there is a header labeled "Profile". Below it, the section is titled "Change Password". The form contains the following fields:

- Username:** user01
- Old password:** [Text input field]
- New password:** [Text input field]
- New password confirmation:** [Text input field]

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

3. **Enter the original password, the new password, and the confirmation password, and click Save.**
4. **Log out of the software or log back in.**
 - **Logout** – Click to log out of the assistant.
 - **Back** – Click to log in to the assistant.
5. **Consider your next action.**
 - Change the password – See [“Change Your Password” on page 69](#).

▼ Change a User's Password (Administrators)

Users with the administrator role can change any user's password.

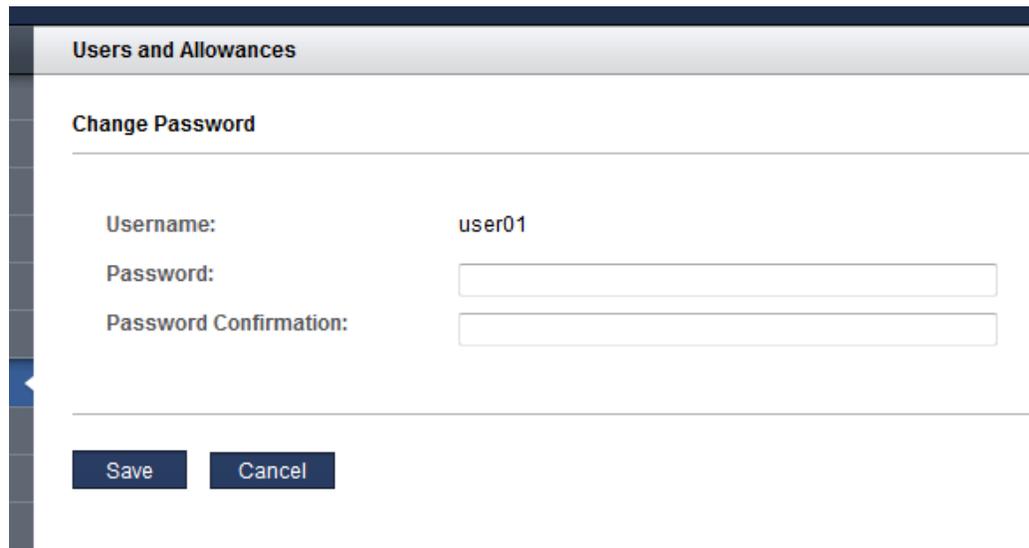
Users without the administrator role can only change their own password (see [“Change Your Password” on page 69](#))

Password parameters such as strength, are governed by the assistant's security settings. See [“Configure Security Settings \(Administrators\)” on page 34](#)

If a user forgets the password, a user with the administrator role can either initiate a password reset (see [“Reset a User's Password \(Administrators\)” on page 73](#)) or change the user's password as described in this procedure.

Note - User passwords are initially set when the user account is created. See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)” on page 64](#).

1. **Log in to the assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**
3. **Select the user whose password you want to change.**
4. **Click Change Password.**



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Users and Allowances" with a sub-section "Change Password". The form contains the following elements:

- Username:** A text field containing the value "user01".
- Password:** An empty text input field.
- Password Confirmation:** An empty text input field.
- Buttons:** Two buttons labeled "Save" and "Cancel" are positioned at the bottom of the form.

5. **Type the new password and password confirmation.**
6. **Click Save.**

7. **Consider your next action.**

- Edit User attributes – See [“Edit a User's Email Address or Role \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 75.
- Go to the next configuration section – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates”](#) on page 79.

▼ **Reset a User's Password (Administrators)**

If a user (including the admin user) requires a password reset, any user with the administrator role can initiate the reset request. The assistant sends the user an email with a link to a form that enables the user to reset the password. The reset link is only valid for 24 hours. You must have administrator privileges to perform this task.

Sendmail must be enabled for a successful reset.

Note - For the procedure on changing (not resetting) a password, see [“Change a User's Password \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 71.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**

3. Select the user and click Edit to check the user's email address.

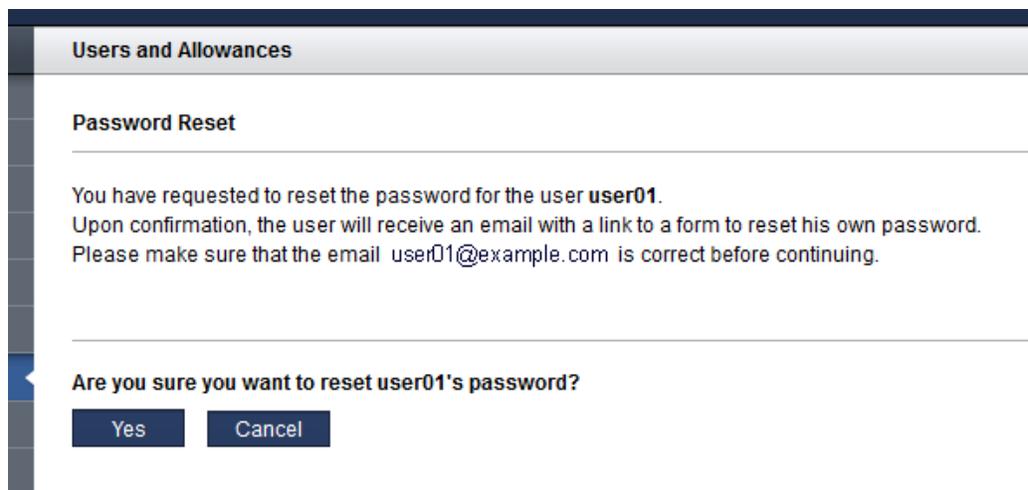


The screenshot shows the 'Users and Allowances' interface with the 'Edit User' form. The form contains the following fields:

- Username:** user01
- Email:** user01@example.com
- Administrator Role:** (with a blue information icon to the right)

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Cancel'.

4. Click Save.
5. Select the user and click Reset Password.



The screenshot shows the 'Users and Allowances' interface with the 'Password Reset' confirmation dialog. The dialog contains the following text:

Password Reset

You have requested to reset the password for the user **user01**.
Upon confirmation, the user will receive an email with a link to a form to reset his own password.
Please make sure that the email user01@example.com is correct before continuing.

Are you sure you want to reset user01's password?

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'Yes' and 'Cancel'.

6. Click Yes.

The assistant sends the user an email with a link to reset their password. For example:

Subject: ACTION REQUIRED: Password Reset for SuperCluster Virtual Assistant
Date: Mon, 01 Aug 2017 17:03:14 -0000
From: do_not_reply@example.com
To: user01@example.com

Please do not reply to this email!

A SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Administrator has requested a password reset for username user01, which is associated with this email address.

Please use the following link to reset your password for the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

The link is valid for the next 24 hours:

<http://example.com/iodct/accounts/password/reset/confirm/5/3uo-bea87f739d4dfd78acbd/>

If you have any further questions please contact your SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Administrator.

7. Consider your next action.

- Edit User attributes – See [“Edit a User's Email Address or Role \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 75.
- Go to the next configuration section – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates”](#) on page 79.

▼ Edit a User's Email Address or Role (Administrators)

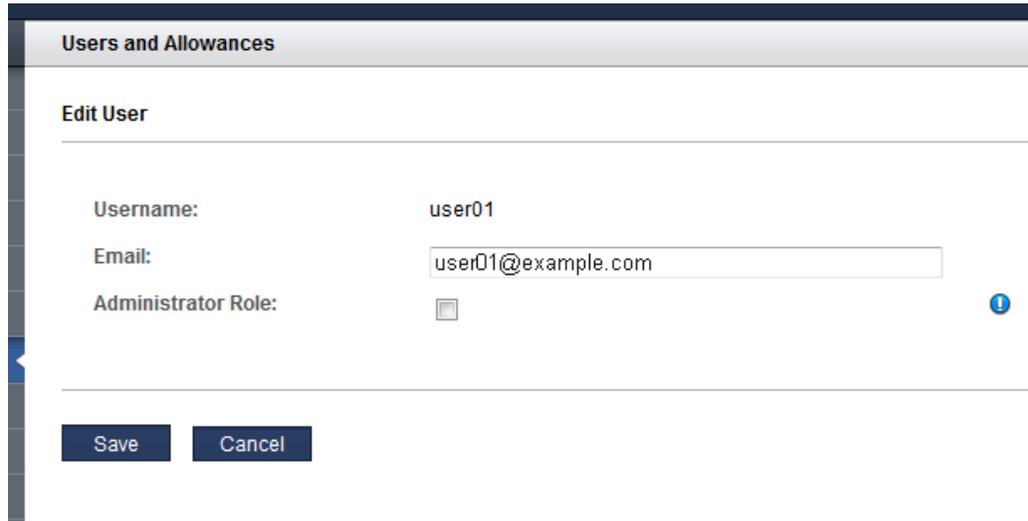
Users with the administrator role can edit these user attributes for any user:

- Email address
- Role (Administrator Role)

Note - To change user resource allocation, see [“Allocate Resources to a User \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 66. To change a user password, see [“Change a User's Password \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 71.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**
3. **Select the user.**

4. Click Edit.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Users and Allowances". Below the title is a section labeled "Edit User". The form contains three fields: "Username:" with the value "user01", "Email:" with the value "user01@example.com" in a text input box, and "Administrator Role:" with an unchecked checkbox. A blue information icon is visible to the right of the checkbox. At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

5. Change any of the user attributes.

6. Click Save.

7. Consider your next action.

- Delete a user – See [“Delete a User \(Administrators\)” on page 76](#).
- Go to the next configuration section – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79](#).

▼ Delete a User (Administrators)

A user with the administrator role can remove any user except for the admin user.

When the user account is deleted, the user's I/O Domains and recipes are automatically deleted. The user's resources are returned to the pool of available resources.



Caution - After you delete a user, you cannot reinstate the user account. All of the user's I/O Domains and recipes are deleted. Any data associated with that account is no longer available.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Users and Allowances.**
3. **Select the user.**
4. **Click Delete User.**
5. **Click Yes.**
6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Add a user – See [“Add a User \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 64.
 - Go to the next configuration section – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates”](#) on page 79.

Managing Recipes and Templates

Recipes are preset resource configurations that you use to create domains. There are two types of recipes:

- **Resource recipe** – Enables you to define the amount of cores, memory, and network resources that can be applied to domains that are created with the resource recipe.
- **Network recipe** – Enables you to define network parameters that are applied to domains that are created with the network recipe.

You can use the default recipes or create your own. Alternatively, you can define resources in a one-time-use custom recipe while you are creating domains. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#).

These topics are covered in this section:

- [“Default Resource Recipes” on page 79](#)
- [“View Recipes” on page 80](#)
- [“Create a Resource Recipe” on page 82](#)
- [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#)
- [“Edit a Recipe” on page 86](#)
- [“Delete a Recipe” on page 87](#)
- [“Upload an OVM Template \(Deprecated\)” on page 87](#)

Default Resource Recipes

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant provides these default recipes with these resources:

Size	Type	Owner	Cores	Mem. (GB)	10 GbE	FC Interfaces	Users
Large	Application Domain	admin	8	128	1	0	All

Size	Type	Owner	Cores	Mem. (GB)	10 GbE	FC Interfaces	Users
Large	Database Domain	admin	8	128	1	0	All
Medium	Application Domain	admin	4	64	1	0	All
Medium	Database Domain	admin	4	64	1	0	All
Small	Application Domain	admin	2	32	1	0	All
Small	Database Domain	admin	2	32	1	0	All

An administrator can edit a default recipe. You cannot delete a default recipe. To create your own recipes, see [“Create a Resource Recipe” on page 82](#).

To view recipes, see [“View Recipes” on page 80](#).

▼ View Recipes

Use this procedure to view resource and network recipes.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
- 2. In the navigation panel, select Recipes.**

This is an example of a screen for an administrator. The non-administrator user screen is similar except that users only see recipes that are configured for the user.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The top navigation bar includes 'About', 'Refresh', and 'Logout' buttons. The user information is 'User: admin', 'Role: Administrator', and 'Language: en'. The left sidebar contains a 'NAVIGATION' menu with options like 'IO Domains', 'Zones', 'Dedicated Domains', 'Recipes', 'Network Resources', 'Physical Hosts', 'Queue', 'Users and Allowances', 'Settings', 'Management Agents', 'Health Monitor', 'System Log', and 'Profile'. The main content area is titled 'Recipes' and contains two tables.

All Resource Recipes

Name	Domain Type	Owner	Cores	Memory	10Gb Interfaces	Users	State
Large	Solaris 11 Application Domain	admin	8	128 GB	1	All	Active
Large	Oracle Database Domain	admin	8	128 GB	1	All	Active
Medium	Solaris 11 Application Domain	admin	4	64 GB	1	All	Active
Medium	Oracle Database Domain	admin	4	64 GB	1	All	Active
Small	Solaris 11 Application Domain	admin	2	32 GB	1	All	Active
Small	Oracle Database Domain	admin	2	32 GB	1	All	Active
dbz-recipe	Oracle Database Domain	admin	12	384 GB	1	All	Active
super_small	Solaris 11 Application Domain	admin	1	16 GB	1	All	Active

All Network Recipes

Name	Owner	Domain Name	Name Servers	Time Servers	Time Zone	Users	State
default	admin	example.com	76.197, 76.198, 82.132	72.1, 75.1	America/Los_Angeles	All	Active

The Available Resource Recipes table provides this information:

- **Name** – The name of the recipe.
- **Domain Type** – The type of I/O Domain (Application, Database, or Database Zone) that the recipe creates. The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant provides default recipes for small, medium, and large application and database domains. I/O Domains that are deployed using OVM templates use *Application Domain* recipes, while Database Zone I/O Domains use *Database Domain* recipes.
- **Owner** – The user that created and owns the recipe.
- **Cores** – The number of cores allocated to domains with this recipe.
- **Memory** – The amount of memory, in GB, allocated to domains with this recipe. Memory is always allocated in 16 GB blocks.
- **10Gb Interfaces** – The number of 10GbE interfaces allocated to domains with this recipe.
- **FC Interfaces** – The number of fibre channel interfaces allocated to domains with this recipe.
- **Users** – All users that have access to this recipe.
- **State** – (Only available to administrators) Either Active (available for use), or Inactive (not available for use).

The Network Recipes table provides this information:

- **Name** – The name of the network recipe.

- **Owner** – The user that created and owns the network recipe.
 - **Domain Name** – The domain name that is assigned to networks that are created by this recipe.
 - **Name Servers** – A list of the name server IP addresses that are assigned to networks that are created by this recipe.
 - **Time Servers** – A list of the time server IP addresses that are assigned to networks that are created by this recipe.
 - **Time Zone** – The time zone that for networks that are created by this recipe.
 - **Users** – The users that can use this recipe to create domains.
 - **State** – (Only available to administrators) Either Active (available for use), or Inactive (not available for use).
3. **Consider your next action.**
- Go to the next task – See [“Create a Resource Recipe” on page 82.](#)
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
 - Go to the next configuration chapter – See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91.](#)

▼ Create a Resource Recipe

Use this procedure to create a new resource recipe.

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant does not prevent you from creating a recipe that exceeds the total resources. To view resources, see [“View System Resources” on page 45.](#)

Alternatively, you can define resources in a one-time-use custom recipe while you are creating domains. See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91.](#)

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select Recipes.**
3. **Under All Resource Recipes, click Add.**

This example shows the screen for an administrator. The non-administrator user screen is similar except as noted below.

4. Enter this information.

Allocate resources carefully. The more 10GbE interfaces you configure, the more IP addresses are required. The assistant imposes limits on cores and memory based on the type of domain.

- **Recipe Name** – The name of this recipe.
- **Domain Type** – Specifies the type of domain that this recipes creates. Your choices are Application Domain, Database Domain, or Database Zone Domain. If you plan to configure the domain with an OVM template, select Application domain (see [“Upload an OVM Template \(Deprecated\)” on page 87](#)).
- **Number of cores** – The number of cores allocated to domains with this recipe.
- **Memory** – The amount of memory, in GB, allocated to domains with this recipe.

- **Number of 10Gb Ethernet Interfaces** – The number of 10GbE interfaces allocated to domains with this recipe. The minimum is 1.
 - **Number of FC Ports** – (If installed and configured in the assistant. See [“Support for Fibre Channel Interfaces in Domains” on page 58](#)) The number of FC interfaces allocated to domains with this recipe. The minimum is 0.
 - **Apply to All** – (Only available to administrators) Select this check box if you want all users listed in the Applicable Users list to have access to this recipe.
 - **Applicable Users** – (Only available to administrators) If you did not select the Apply to All check box, you can select individual users. Use the Control key (or the Command key on a Macintosh) to select more than one user.
 - **Active** – (Only available to administrators) Select this check box to make this recipe available to use.
5. **Click Save.**
 6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20](#).
 - Go to the next task – [“Edit a Recipe” on page 86](#).

▼ Create a Network Recipe

Network recipes enable you to define network parameters that are automatically applied to domains that are created with the network recipe.

Note - Alternatively, you can define resources in a one-time-use custom network recipe while you are creating domains. See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91](#).

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Recipes.**

3. Under All Network Recipes, click Add.

The screenshot shows a web interface for creating a new network recipe. The title bar says 'Recipes' with an information icon. Below it, the section is 'Create a New Network Recipe'. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Recipe Name:** A text input field.
- Domain Name:** A text input field.
- Name Servers:** A text input field with an information icon to its right.
- Time Servers:** A text input field with an information icon to its right.
- Time Zone:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Europe/London' with an information icon to its right.
- Apply to All:** A checked checkbox with an information icon to its right.
- Applicable Users:** A list box containing 'admin' and 'user01' with an information icon to its right.
- Active:** A checked checkbox with an information icon to its right.

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Cancel'.

4. Enter this information.

- **Recipe Name** – Type a unique name to identify this recipe.
- **Domain Name** – Type the domain name, such as `example.com`, that is applied to domains that are created with this recipe.
- **Name Servers** – Provide a list of comma or space separated IP addresses of name servers that are applied to domains that are created with this recipe.
- **Time Servers** – Provide a list of comma or space separated IP addresses of time servers that are applied to domains that are created with this recipe.
- **Time Zone** – Select an time zone. The time zone selected is applied to domains that are that are created with this recipe.
- **Apply to All** – (Only available to administrators) Select this check box if you want all users listed in the Applicable Users list to have access to this recipe.

- **Applicable Users** – (Only available to administrators) Select the individual users if you did not select the Apply to All selection. Use the Control key (or the Command key on a Mac) to select more than one user.
 - **Active** – (Only available to administrators) Select this check box to make this recipe available for use.
5. **Click Save.**
 6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
 - Go to the next task [“Edit a Recipe” on page 86.](#)

▼ Edit a Recipe

Use this procedure to edit a resource or network recipe. Any changes you make to a recipe are only reflected in future domains that are created using this recipe. The changes are not reflected in domains that are previously created based on the recipe.

Note - The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant does not prevent you from creating a recipe that exceeds the total available resources. To view resources, see [“View System Resources” on page 45.](#)

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select Recipes.**
3. **Select the recipe you want to edit and click Edit.**
4. **Change any of the displayed parameters.**
5. **Click Save.**
6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
 - Go to the next task – See [“Delete a Recipe” on page 87.](#)

▼ Delete a Recipe

Use this procedure to delete a recipe. Any domains that were created with the deleted recipe are unaffected.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select Recipes.**
3. **Select the recipe you want to delete and click Delete.**
4. **Click Yes.**
5. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)

▼ Upload an OVM Template (Deprecated)

As of SuperCluster version 3.0, this feature is no longer available. The following procedure applies to SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier.

Oracle VM (OVM) templates enable you to deploy a fully configured software stack using preinstalled and preconfigured software images.

Before you can create domains using an OVM template, you must upload the template into the assistant. After the template is available, users can select the template during the domain creation process, which results in domains with a preconfigured OS and application. The templates in the assistant can be used repeatedly to create domains.

Only users with the administrator role can perform this procedure.

This table provides additional OVM template resources.

Resource	Link
Procedure in this guide	“Create an I/O Domain With an OVM Template (Deprecated)” on page 120

Resource	Link
MOS article: Using OVM Templates in IO Domains on SuperCluster (Doc ID 2065199.1)	https://support.oracle.com

1. Obtain an OVM template that is supported by the assistant.

For more information about OVM templates, go to: <https://www.oracle.com/virtualization/technologies/virtual-appliances.html>

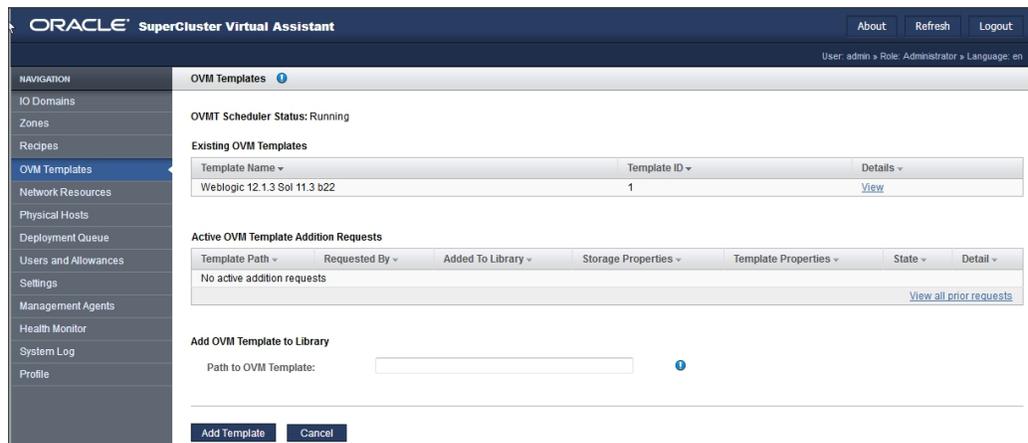
Note - Not all OVM templates are supported by the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

Save the template in a location that is accessible as a file from the master control domain of SuperCluster.

2. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.

3. In the navigation panel, select OVM Templates.



4. In the Path to OVM Template, type the path to the OVM template that you downloaded from Oracle Support.

5. Click Add Template.

The template requires several minutes to upload. After the template is uploaded, you can create domains using the template.

6. To monitor the upload progress, perform these activities:

- In the assistant, watch for a message similar to this example:

The template from file `file:///var/tmp/ovmt/OVM_S11.3_WLS12.1.3_SPARC_SCRIPT_B4.ova` is being added. This may take several minutes.

- In the master control domain, type:

```
root@etc4m-appadm0101:~# ps -ef | grep ovm | grep -v grep
root 47826 47825  0 19:15:36 ?    0:00 ksh /opt/oracle.supercluster/osc-ovmt/osc-ovmt -i file:///var/tmp/ovmt/OVM_S11.
root 47822  646  0 19:15:36 ?    0:00 /usr/bin/python /opt/oracle.supercluster/osc-domcreate/iodine/iodine/ovmt.py -a
root 47914 47826  0 19:15:38 ?    0:00 /opt/oracle.supercluster/osc-ovmtutils/ovmtlibrary -c store -o file:///var/tmp
```

7. Consider your next action.

- Configure a domain with an OVM template – See [“Create an I/O Domain With an OVM Template \(Deprecated\)” on page 120](#).
- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20](#).
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#).
- View domains – See [“View I/O Domains” on page 95](#).

Creating and Deploying I/O Domains

These topics describe how to use the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant to configure and manage I/O Domains.

Description	Links
Choose a method for creating an I/O Domain.	“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91
Gather required information.	“Required Information for Configuring I/O Domains” on page 92
View I/O Domains.	“View I/O Domains” on page 95
Create an I/O Domain.	“Create a Database I/O Domain” on page 97
	“Create a Database Zone Domain” on page 105
	“Create an Application I/O Domain” on page 113
	“Create an I/O Domain With an OVM Template (Deprecated)” on page 120
(Optional) Configure or delete a zone.	“Configure a Database Zone” on page 137
	“Delete Zone Configuration Information” on page 145
(Optional) Change the SCAN name for Database Domains.	“Change the Name of a SCAN Network” on page 113
(Optional) Increase or decrease the cores and memory in a domain.	“Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources” on page 127
(Optional) Transform a Database I/O Domain into a Database Zone Domain	“Transform a Database Domain Into a Database Zone Domain” on page 131
Deploy an I/O Domain.	“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133
(Optional) Export text for Oracle Enterprise Manager.	“Export an I/O Domains Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager” on page 135

▼ Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method

1. Choose how you want the domain resources to be sized.

There are several ways to assign the number of cores, memory, and network resources to an I/O Domain.

Use one of these approaches:

- **Use a default resource recipe** – Use one of the provided large, medium, or small default recipes. To see the resources associated with default recipes, see [“Default Resource Recipes” on page 79](#).
- **Use your own reusable recipe** – Create your recipe. See [“Create a Resource Recipe” on page 82](#).
- **Define the resources individually for each domain** – During the domain creation process, you specify the amount of cores, memory, and 10GbE interfaces. There is no need to create a recipe prior to creating the I/O Domain. **Note** – If you want to assign a 10GbE NIC port pair to the I/O Domain, you must use this method. See [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)” on page 53](#).

2. Choose how you want network parameters applied to the domain.

There are several ways to assign the network parameters such as name servers, time servers, and time zones..

Use one of these approaches:

- **Use the default network recipe** – Use one provided. See [“View Recipes” on page 80](#).
- **Use your own reusable network recipe** – Create a network recipe. See [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#).
- **Define the network parameters individually for each domain** – During the domain creation process, you specify the network parameters. There is no need to create or use a network recipe prior to creating the I/O Domain.

3. Choose the type of I/O Domain you want to create.

- **Database Domain** – Perform the steps in [“Create a Database I/O Domain” on page 97](#).
- **Database Zone Domain** – Perform the steps in [“Create a Database Zone Domain” on page 105](#).
- **Application Domain** – Perform the steps in [“Create an Application I/O Domain” on page 113](#).

Required Information for Configuring I/O Domains

You can use one of these worksheets to gather the information you need when you configure a domain. Use the table that corresponds with the type of domain you plan to create.

TABLE 1 Database and Database Zone Domain Worksheet

Database I/O Domains	Your Value
Know what resources are available. See “View System Resources” on page 45 .	
<p>One of these items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A resource recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ The number of cores, memory, 10GbE interfaces, and FC interfaces. <p>Note - Ensure that the resources do not exceed available resources.</p>	
<p>One of these items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A network recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ These network parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Domain name. ■ IP addresses of name servers. ■ IP addresses of time servers. ■ Time zone. 	
<p>(Optional) VLAN Tags for client networks</p> <p>(must already exist in Network Resources. See “Add VLAN Tags (Administrators)” on page 56)</p>	
RAC ID number (DB I/O and DB Zone Domains only).	
Physical host	
Management network hostname	
Client network hostname	
Storage IB network hostname	
Exadata IB network hostname	
VIP network hostname (Database Domain only).	

TABLE 2 Application I/O Domain Worksheet

Application Domains	Your Value
Know what resources are available. See “View System Resources” on page 45 .	
One of these items:	

Application Domains	Your Value
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A resource recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ The number of cores, memory, 10GbE interfaces, and FC interfaces. <p>Note - Ensure that the resources do not exceed available resources.</p>	
<p>One of these items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A network recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ These network parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Domain name. ■ IP addresses of name servers. ■ IP addresses of time servers. ■ Time zone. 	
<p>(Optional) VLAN Tags for client networks</p> <p>(must already exist in Network Resources. See “Add VLAN Tags (Administrators)” on page 56)</p>	
Physical host.	
Management network hostname	
Client network hostname	
Storage IB network hostname	

TABLE 3 OVM Template-Based I/O Domain Worksheet (Deprecated)

OVM Template-Based I/O Domain	Your Value
<p>Note: This feature is not available in SuperCluster version 3.0 or later.</p>	
Know what resources are available. See “View System Resources” on page 45.	
An OVM template uploaded to the assistant.	
<p>One of these items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A resource recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ The number of cores, memory, 10GbE interfaces, and FC interfaces. 	

OVN Template-Based I/O Domain	Your Value
Note: This feature is not available in SuperCluster version 3.0 or later.	
Note - Ensure that the resources do not exceed available resources.	
One of these items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A network recipe with the desired set of resources. ■ These network parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Domain name. ■ IP addresses of name servers. ■ IP addresses of time servers. ■ Time zone. 	
VLAN Tags	
Physical host.	
Management network hostname.	
Client network hostname.	
Storage IB network hostname.	
(template dependent) Possible additional configuration information.	

▼ View I/O Domains

Use this procedure to view domains, domain resources, and their state.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)

2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The navigation panel on the left is expanded to show 'IO Domains'. The main content area is titled 'IO Domains' and contains two tables.

List of IO Domains

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	1	Ready for Use	View
finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View
branch01	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	user01	3	0	Ready for Use	View
branch02	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	user01	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
ip-scan-25	179.3	179.4	179.5	111	admin	1
ip-scan-27	179.17	179.18	179.19		user01	3

- **Hostname** – The name of the domain.
- **Domain Type** – Either Database, Database Zone, Application, or a template-based domain that was added during the domain creation.
- **Physical Host** – The compute node that provides the resources for this domain.
- **Owner** – The user that created the domain.
- **RAC ID** – (Database Domain only) Identifies which RAC the Database Domain uses. Each user has a private set of RAC IDs.
- **Zones** – The number of zones configured for a Database Zone Domain. The ability to create and manage zones is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.
- **State** – The state of the domain. Following are examples of some of the states:
 - **Creating LDom** – The logical domain for the domain is being created.
 - **Deleting/Deleted Domain** – The domain is deleted.
 - **Domain Deletion Failed** – The deletion operation failed.
 - **Error** – An error occurred.
 - **Installing OS** – The OS is being installed.
 - **Queued for Deployment** – The domain is in the queue awaiting for deployment to begin.
 - **Queued for Deletion** – The domain is in the queue to be deleted.

- **Ready for Use** – The domain is in service.
- **Resources Allocated** – The domain is configured. The resources are allocated, but the domain is not yet deployed for use.

This information is provided under SCAN Address Groups:

- **Hostname** – The Oracle RAC single client access name (SCAN).
 - **Address 1** – The first SCAN IP address.
 - **Address 2** – The second SCAN IP address.
 - **Address 3** – The third SCAN IP address.
 - **VLAN** – The [VLAN tag](#) assigned to the interface.
 - **Owner** – The user who created the domain.
 - **RAC ID** – (Database Domain only) The RAC identification number for a Database Domain.
3. **For additional details about a domain, click View.**
 4. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#).
 - Go to the next task – See [“Create a Database I/O Domain” on page 97](#).
 - Delete a Domain – See [“Delete a Domain” on page 161](#).

▼ Create a Database I/O Domain

Creating a Database I/O Domain reserves the specified amount of resources for the domain. The domain is not installed and available until you deploy it. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

You can use a recipe to assign the amount of resources to the Database Domain and configure the network parameters, or you can define the resources and network parameters on the fly. If you plan to use a recipe, it must exist before you perform this procedure. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#).

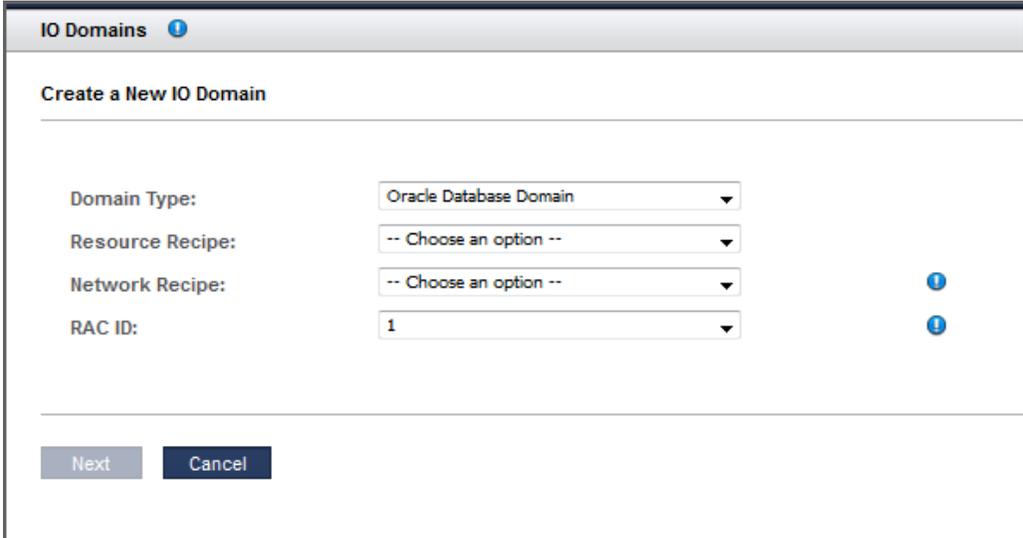
You can use a network recipe to assign the network resources to the domain, or you can define the resources on the fly. If you plan to use a recipe, it must exist before you perform this procedure. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#). If you plan to assign VLAN tags to the domain, they must exist in Network Resources before you perform this procedure. See [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#).

The assistant does not allow you to assign more resources than are available.

Note - (Only applies to SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier) If you plan to change CPU and memory allocations for dedicated domains with the `osc-setcoremem` tool, do so before you configure any domains. Refer to the Administration Guide for your SuperCluster model (for example, “[Configuring CPU and Memory Resources \(osc-setcoremem\)](#)” in *Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Administration Guide*).

This note does not apply to SuperCluster 3.0 (or later).

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
3. **Click Add.**
4. **Define these parameters to create an I/O Database Domain.**



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "IO Domains" with a sub-header "Create a New IO Domain". The form contains four rows of configuration options, each with a dropdown menu and a blue information icon to its right:

- Domain Type: Oracle Database Domain
- Resource Recipe: -- Choose an option --
- Network Recipe: -- Choose an option --
- RAC ID: 1

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: "Next" (disabled) and "Cancel" (active).

- **Domain Type** – Choose Oracle Database Domain.
- **Resource Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - A Small, Medium, Large, or any other recipe – See “[Managing Recipes and Templates](#)” on page 79.

- Custom Recipe – Enter resource allocations for cores, memory, and 10GbE interfaces. Go to [Step 5](#). **Note** – If you want to assign a 10GbE NIC port pair to the I/O Domain, you must use this method. For information about port pairs, see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 53.
- **Network Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - One of the network recipes – See [“Create a Network Recipe”](#) on page 84.
 - Custom Recipe – Enter the network parameters.
- **RAC ID** – When you choose Database Domain as the domain type, an additional RAC ID selection becomes available. Choose the RAC ID that the domain uses. If the domain is joining an existing RAC, the network recipe is inherited from the RAC and the network recipe cannot be changed. The RAC ID already has items set from the initial installation (client networks, network recipes, and VLAN tags). Everything in the RAC, including this new Database Domain, will have those same items assigned to it. Oracle SuperCluster supports up to eight RAC clusters.

This is an example of the screen that is displayed when the second member of an Oracle Database RAC is being created.

IO Domains ⓘ

Create a New IO Domain

Domain Type:

Resource Recipe:

Network Recipe:

RAC ID:

Choosing this RAC will cause the IO Domain to join the following existing Cluster:

RAC Members			
Hostname	Client Hostname	Host Type	Status
sales	sales-client	Oracle Database Domain	Resources Allocated

RAC Network Domain			
Domain Name	Name Servers	Time Servers	Time Zone
example.com	176.197.1.1, 176.198.1.1, 176.199.1.1	172.1.1.1, 172.1.1.2	America/Los_Angeles

Useable RAC Client Network Segments			
Network	Netmask	Gateway	Available IPs
179.1.1.0	255.255.252.0	179.1.1.1	94

RAC SCAN Address Group				
SCAN Hostname	SCAN IP 1	SCAN IP 2	SCAN IP 3	VLANs
io-scan-22	179.4.1.1	179.5.1.1	179.6.1.1	

5. **If you selected Custom Resource Recipe for resources, define these resources and click Next.**

- **Number of Cores** – Choose a minimum of two cores for a Database Domain.
- **Memory** – Choose a minimum of 32 GB Memory for a Database Domain.
- **Number of 10GbE Interfaces** – Choose up to two 10GbE Interfaces for a Database Domain.
- **Number of FC ports** – Choose up to two assignable fibre channel ports for a Database Domain.

6. **If you selected Custom Network Recipe for the network, define these resources and click Next.**

- **Domain Name** – Type the domain name, such as `example.com`, that is applied to this Database Domain.
- **Name Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of name servers that are applied to this Database Domain.
- **Time Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of time servers that are applied to this Database Domain.
- **Time Zone** – Choose a time zone for this Database Domain.

7. **Review the resources and click Next.**

Note - If you requested more resources than are available, the assistant highlights the resource on each physical host that does not meet the requirements.

8. **Choose the physical host and add network information.**

- If you are creating a Database Domain with a Custom Resource Recipe and a Custom Network Recipe, configure these parameters. Depending on your choices, you might see fewer fields.
 - **Maximum Number of Zones** – (as of SuperCluster 3.0) From the drop-down list, choose the maximum number of zones that can be created in this I/O Domain. This value defines the number of alt-mac-addresses that can be allocated to the I/O Domain. Prior to version 3.0, the maximum number of zones was set to 2 times the number of cores and could not be changed.
 - **Physical Host** – Choose the compute node where the Database Domain will reside. If you are creating a RAC, select different compute nodes for each Database Domain for redundancy.
 - **Management Network** – You can select the Management Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Management Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be

selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Management Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Management Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Management interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If the I/O Domain has two Management Interfaces, then each of those Management Interfaces can use any Management Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.

- **Management Hostname** – Type a unique name for this Database Domain.
- **Network Endpoint** – This option is only displayed when port pairs are configured (see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 53).

If port pairs are configured, select the network endpoint that you want the I/O Domain to use.

Network Endpoint 1

- **Client (10Gb) Network** – You can select the Client Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Client Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Client (10Gb) Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Client Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Client (10Gb) interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If an I/O Domain has two Client Interfaces, then each of those Client Interfaces can use any Client Network with sufficient available IP Addresses. domain created with an OVM template

- **Client (10Gb) IP Address** – Displayed only if the IP Address assignment is set to manual. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36. When this setting is enabled, you see a drop-down list of IP Addresses from the selected Client (10Gb) Network and you can select the desired IP Address.

- **Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag** – This field is always present on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by - - - .
- **Client (10Gb) Primary VLAN Tag** – If VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select a VLAN tag from the drop-down list to assign to this I/O Domain. For DB Domains, the selected VLAN tag is also used for the VIP and SCAN networks. Note - the VLAN tag cannot be changed if this I/O Domain is joining an existing RAC that has a pre-defined VLAN.

This field is always present on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by - - - - - . VLAN tags are only configured on the 10 GbE client network. Primary VLAN tags are applied to the network interface and to the VF.
- **Client (10Gb) Aux VLAN Tag** – As of SuperCluster version 3.0, if VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select one or more VLAN tags from the auxiliary list, otherwise the list is empty. auxiliary VLAN tags only apply to VFs. A typical use of auxiliary VLAN tags is to assign them to zones that are later created in the I/O Domain.
- **Client (10Gb) Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name to the client network for this Database Domain.
- **Storage IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured, the IP address might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose an available IP address for the ZFS Storage Network. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#).
- **Storage IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the ZFS Storage Hostname.
- **Exadata IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured (see [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#)), the IP address might be automatically assigned, or you might be able to choose an available IP address in the Exadata IB network.
- **Exadata IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the Exadata IB network for this Database Domain.

For example:

9. Click Allocate to create the Database Domain.

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant reserves the system resources but does not deploy the configuration. You can deploy the Database Domain at your convenience. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

Note - Resources are only reserved for 120 hours (five days). If the domain is not deployed within that time frame, the resources are returned to the free pool.

Additional SCAN hostname and IP addresses are assigned during the allocation process. You can rename the SCAN networks later if you desire.

If a configuration issue is detected, the assistant displays a message:

- Insufficient resources. For example:

```
Insufficient Unallocated Cores available on the chosen Compute Node. 10 Requested,  
8 Remaining.
```

- Configurations that might have performance issues. For example:

```
Error: VF allocation requires dedicated core in the same locality group for  
performance  
reasons  
requested core count: 1  
optimal core count based on number of requested VFs: 2
```

If you receive one of these messages, click Cancel and configure a new Database Domain using a recipe that requests fewer or different resources.

10. Verify that the Database Domain allocation completed.

A confirmation panel is displayed at the top of the I/O Domains screen. The State column displays the status of the allocation.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The main content area displays a confirmation message: "The new IO Domain sales has been successfully allocated. Please contact your Network Administrator to ensure that the following host and IP information be added to DNS:". Below this, it lists network information:

Network	Host	IP
Management Network:	sales	75.152
Client Network:	sales-client	79.6
	sales-vip	79.7
	io-scan-25	79.3

Below the confirmation message, there are two tables:

List of IO Domains

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View
sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
io-scan-25	79.3	79.4	79.5	111	admin	1

11. Add the management and client networks to DNS.

The network host names and IP addresses are displayed in the confirmation panel in the I/O Domains screen, and are available when you view the domain's details.

12. Consider your next action.

- Deploy the Domain – See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#).
- Monitor activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163](#).
- Change the name of a SCAN network for Database Domains – See [“Change the Name of a SCAN Network” on page 113](#).

▼ Create a Database Zone Domain

The ability to create and configure a Database Zone Domain is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.

Creating a Database Zone Domain reserves the specified amount of resources for the domain. The domain is not installed and available until you deploy it. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

You can use a recipe to assign the amount of resources to the Database Zone Domain and configure the network parameters, or you can define the resources and network parameters on the fly. If you plan to use a recipe, it must exist before you perform this procedure. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#).

You can use a network recipe to assign the network resources to the domain, or you can define the resources on the fly. If you plan to use a recipe, it must exist before you perform this procedure. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#). If you plan to assign VLAN tags to the domain, they must exist in Network Resources before you perform this procedure. See [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#).

The assistant does not allow you to assign more resources than are available.

Note - (Only applies to SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier) If you plan to change CPU and memory allocations for dedicated domains with the `osc-setcoremem` tool, do so before you configure any domains. Refer to the Administration Guide for your SuperCluster model (for example, [“Configuring CPU and Memory Resources \(osc-setcoremem\)” in Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Administration Guide](#)).

This note does not apply to SuperCluster 3.0 (or later).

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
- 2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
- 3. Click Add.**

4. Define these parameters.

The screenshot shows a window titled "IO Domains" with a sub-header "Create a New IO Domain". Below the sub-header are three dropdown menus:

- Domain Type:** Oracle Database Zone Domain
- Resource Recipe:** -- Choose an option --
- Network Recipe:** -- Choose an option --

At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "Next" and "Cancel".

- **Domain Type** – Choose Oracle Database Zone Domain.
 - **Resource Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - A Small, Medium, Large, or any other recipe – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79](#).
 - Custom Recipe – Enter resource allocations for cores, memory, and 10GbE interfaces. Go to [Step 5](#). **Note** – If you want to assign a 10GbE NIC port pair to the I/O Domain, you must use this method. For information about port pairs, see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)” on page 53](#).
 - **Network Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - One of the network recipes – See [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#).
 - Custom Recipe – Enter the network parameters.
5. If you selected **Custom Resource Recipe** for resources, define these resources and click **Next**:
- **Number of Cores** – Choose a minimum of two cores for a Database Zone Domain.
 - **Memory** – Choose a minimum of 32 GB Memory for a Database Zone Domain.
 - **Number of 10GbE Interfaces** – Choose up to two 10GbE Interfaces for a Database Zone Domain.

- **Number of FC ports** – Choose up to two assignable fibre channel ports for a Database Zone Domain.

6. If you selected Custom Network Recipe for the network, define these resources and click Next.

- **Domain Name** – Type the domain name, such as `example.com`, for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Name Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of name servers for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Time Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of time servers for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Time Zone** – Choose a time zone for this Database Zone Domain.

Note - When you select Database Zone Domain as the domain type, the RAC ID field is not available. You will assign RAC IDs to the zones within the Database Zone Domain, not to the Database Zone Domain itself.

7. Review the resources and click Next.

Note - If you requested more resources than are available, the assistant highlights the resource on each physical host that does not meet requirements.

8. Choose the physical host and add network information.

- If you are creating a Database Zone Domain with a Custom Resource Recipe and a Custom Network Recipe, configure these parameters. Depending on your choices, you may see fewer fields.
 - **Maximum Number of Zones** – (as of SuperCluster 3.0) From the drop-down list, choose the maximum number of zones that can be created in this I/O Domain. The maximum number that you are able to select is two times the number of cores that are allocated to the I/O Domain.
 - **Physical Host** – Choose the compute node where the Database Zone Domain will reside.
 - **Install Group** – Depending how the assistant is configured, the Install Groups might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose a different Install Group.
 - **Management Network** – You can select the Management Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Management Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Management Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two

entries for the Management Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Management interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If the I/O Domain has two Management Interfaces, then each of those Management Interfaces can use any Management Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.

- **Management IP Address** – If administrative privileges were set, you can select the management or client IP addresses directly.
- **Management Hostname** – Type a unique name for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Network Endpoint** – This option is only displayed when port pairs are configured (see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 53).

If port pairs are configured, select the network endpoint that you want the I/O Domain to use.

Network Endpoint 1

- **Client (10Gb) Network** – You can select the Client Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Client Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Client (10Gb) Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Client Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Client (10Gb) interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If an I/O Domain has two Client Interfaces, then each of those Client Interfaces can use any Client Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.

Client (10Gb) Network 1:	<input type="text" value="115.1/22 (168 available)"/>	
Client (10Gb) IP Address 1:	<input type="text" value="115.45"/>	
Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag 1:	<input type="text" value="---"/>	
Client (10Gb) Hostname 1:	<input type="text"/>	
Client (10Gb) Network 2:	<input type="text" value="115.1/22 (168 available)"/>	
Client (10Gb) IP Address 2:	<input type="text" value="115.45"/>	
Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag 2:	<input type="text" value="---"/>	
Client (10Gb) Hostname 2:	<input type="text"/>	

- **Client (10Gb) IP Address** – Displayed only if the IP Address assignment is set to manual. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36. When this setting is enabled, you see a drop-down list of IP Addresses from the selected Client (10Gb) Network and you can select the desired IP Address.

- **Client (10Gb) Primary VLAN Tag** – If VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select a VLAN tag from the drop-down list to assign to this I/O Domain. This field is always displayed on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by - - -. VLAN tags are only configured on the 10 GbE client network. Primary VLAN tags are applied to the network interface and to the VF.
- **Client (10Gb) Aux VLAN Tag** – As of SuperCluster version 3.0, if VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select one or more VLAN tags from the auxiliary list, otherwise the list is empty. auxiliary VLAN tags only apply to VFs. A typical use of auxiliary VLAN tags is to assign them to zones that are later created in the I/O Domain.
- **Client (10Gb) Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the Client Hostname for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Storage IB Network** – Choose an available network subnet.
- **Storage IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the ZFS Storage Hostname for this Database Zone Domain.
- **Exadata IB Network** – Choose an available network subnet.
- **Exadata IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the first Exadata IB Network for this Database Zone Domain.

For example:

9. Click Allocate to create the Database Zone Domain.

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant reserves the system resources but does not deploy the configuration. You can deploy the Database Zone Domain at your convenience. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

Note - Resources are reserved for 120 hours (five days). If the domain is not deployed within that time frame, the resources are returned to the free pool.

If the assistant detects a configuration issue, a message appears:

- Insufficient resources. For example:

```
Insufficient Unallocated Cores available on the chosen Compute Node. 10 Requested,
8 Remaining.
```

- Configurations that might have performance issues. For example:

```
Error: VF allocation requires dedicated core in the same locality group for
performance reasons.
requested core count: 1 optimal core count based on number of requested VFs: 2
```

If you receive one of these messages, click Cancel and configure a new domain using a recipe that requests fewer or different resources.

10. Verify that the Database Zone Domain allocation completed.

A confirmation panel is displayed at the top of the I/O Domains screen. The State column displays the status of the allocation.

11. Add the management and client networks to DNS.

The network host names and IP addresses are displayed in the confirmation panel in the I/O Domains screen, and are available when you view the Database Zone Domain's details.

12. Consider your next action.

- Deploy the domain – See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#)
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#).
- Monitor activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163](#).
- Change the name of a SCAN network for Database Zone Domains – See [“Change the Name of a SCAN Network” on page 113](#).

▼ Change the Name of a SCAN Network

Perform this procedure if you want to change the name of the SCAN networks for a Database Domain or a Database Zone.

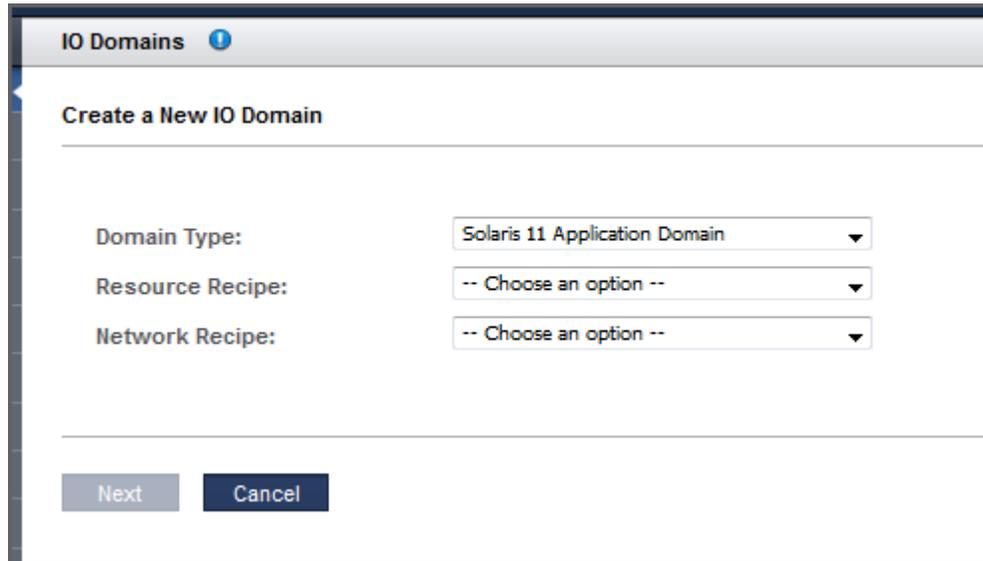
Note - The SCAN hostname can only be changed before the first I/O Domain or zone with the same associated RAC ID is deployed. After an I/O Domain is deployed, the SCAN hostname can no longer be changed.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains or Zones.**
3. **In the SCAN Address Groups table, select a row that contains the network.**
4. **Click Edit.**
5. **Type the new name and click Save.**
6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Install the Oracle Database on a Database Domain – See [“Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone” on page 233.](#)
 - Monitor deployment activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163.](#)
 - Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21.](#)

▼ Create an Application I/O Domain

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
3. **Click Add.**

4. Define these parameters to create an Application Domain.



- **Domain Type** – Select Solaris 11 Application Domain.
 - **Resource Recipe** – Select one of these options:
 - A Small, Medium, Large, or any other recipe – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79](#).
 - Custom Resource Recipe – Enter resource allocations for cores, memory, and 10GbE interfaces. See [Step 5](#). **Note** – If you want to assign a 10GbE NIC port pair to the I/O Domain, you must use this method. For information about port pairs, see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)” on page 53](#).
 - **Network Recipe** – Select one of these options:
 - One of the network recipes – See [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#).
 - Custom Recipe – Enter the network parameters.
5. If you selected Custom Recipe, define the amount of these resources, then click Next.
- **Number of Cores** – Choose a minimum of one core for an Application Domain.
 - **Memory** – Choose a minimum of 16 GB Memory for an Application Domain.
 - **Number of 10GbE Interfaces** – Choose up to two 10GbE interfaces for an Application Domain.

- **Number of FC ports** – Choose up to two assignable fibre channel ports for an Application Domain.
6. **If you selected Custom Recipe for the network, define these resources and click Next.**
- **Domain Name** – Type the domain name, such as `example.com`, for this Application Domain.
 - **Name Servers** – Provide a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of name servers for this Application Domain.
 - **Time Servers** – Provide a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of time servers for this Application Domain.
 - **Time Zone** – Choose a time zone for this Application Domain.
7. **Review the resources and click Next.**

Note - If you requested more resources than are available, the assistant highlights the resources that are not available.

IO Domains ?

Create a New IO Domain

Domain Type:

Resource Recipe:

Network Recipe: ?

Comparison of the selected Default Recipe with the user's allowance and available resources

Resource	Cores	Memory	10Gb Interfaces
Selected Recipe	4	64 GB	1
User Allowance	Unrestricted	Unrestricted	Unrestricted
M8 PDOM 1	Total: 68 Available: 62	Total: 928 GB Available: 832 GB	Total: 32 Available: 29
M8 PDOM 3	Total: 54 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 32 Available: 32
M8 PDOM 4	Total: 54 Available: 54	Total: 928 GB Available: 928 GB	Total: 32 Available: 32

8. Provide additional configuration information.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' configuration window with the following settings:

- Domain Type:** Solaris 11 Application Domain
- Resource Recipe:** Medium (admin)
- Network Recipe:** default (admin)
- Maximum Number of Zones:** 4
- Physical Host:** M8 PDOM 4
- Install Group:** Solaris Large Server
- Management Network:** 192.168.75.151/22 (42 available)
- Management IP Address:** 192.168.75.154
- Management Hostname:** finance
- Network Endpoint:** Production Network
- Client (10Gb) Network:** 192.168.79.1/22 (92 available)
- Client (10Gb) IP Address:** 192.168.79.9
- Client (10Gb) Primary VLAN Tag:** 333
- Client (10Gb) Aux VLAN Tag(s):** 111, 222, 333, 21
- Client (10Gb) Hostname:** finance-client
- Storage IB Network:** 192.168.33.1/22 (252 available)
- Storage IB Hostname:** finance-storib

Buttons at the bottom: Back, Allocate, Cancel

Configure these parameters:

- **Maximum Number of Zones** – (as of SuperCluster 3.0) From the drop-down list, choose the maximum number of zones that can be created in this I/O Domain. The maximum number that you are able to select is two times the number of cores.
- **Physical Host** – The compute node where the Application Domain will reside.
- **Install Group** – Depending on your configuration, choose one of these options:
 - **Solaris Minimal Server** – Installs the minimum set of packages that are required to boot the OS, log in, and manually add additional packages as required.
 - **Solaris Large Server** – Installs all of the common network services and drivers that an enterprise server typically provides.
- **Management Network** – You can select the Management Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Management Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Management Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Management Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Management interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If the I/O Domain has two Management Interfaces, then each of those Management Interfaces can use any Management Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.
- **Management Hostname** – Enter a unique name for this Application Domain.
- **Network Endpoint** – This option is only displayed when port pairs are configured (see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 53).

If port pairs are configured, select the network endpoint that you want the I/O Domain to use.

Network Endpoint 1

- **Client (10Gb) Network** – You can select the Client Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Client Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Client (10Gb) Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Client Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Client (10Gb) interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If an I/O Domain has two Client Interfaces, then each of those Client Interfaces can use any Client Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.

- **Client (10Gb) IP Address** – Displayed only if the IP Address assignment is set to manual. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#). When this setting is enabled, you see a drop-down list of IP Addresses from the selected Client (10Gb) Network and you can select the desired IP Address.
 - **Client (10Gb) Primary VLAN Tag** – If VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select a VLAN tag from the drop-down list to assign to this I/O Domain. This field is always displayed on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by ---. VLAN tags are only configured on the 10 GbE client network. Primary VLAN tags are applied to the network interface and to the VF.
 - **Client (10Gb) Aux VLAN Tag** – As of SuperCluster version 3.0, if VLAN tags were added to the Network Resources (see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)” on page 56](#)) you can select one or more VLAN tags from the auxiliary list, otherwise the list is empty. auxiliary VLAN tags only apply to VFs. A typical use of auxiliary VLAN tags is to assign them to zones that are later created in the I/O Domain.
 - **Client (10Gb) Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the client network for this Application Domain.
 - **Storage IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured, the IP address might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose an available IP address for the ZFS Storage Network. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#).
 - **Storage IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the ZFS Storage Hostname for this Application Domain.
9. **Click Allocate to create the Application Domain.**
- The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant reserves the system resources but does not deploy the configuration. You can deploy the Application Domain at your convenience. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

Note - Resources are only reserved for 120 hours (five days). If the domain is not deployed within that time frame, the resources are returned to the free pool.

If the assistant detects a configuration issue, the assistant displays a message:

- Insufficient resources. For example:

Insufficient Unallocated Cores available on the chosen Compute Node. 10 Requested, 8 Remaining

- Configurations that might have performance issues. For example:

Error: VF allocation requires dedicated core in the same locality group for performance reasons.
requested core count: 1 optimal core count based on number of requested VFs: 2

If you receive one of these messages, click Cancel and configure a new domain using a recipe that requests fewer or different resources.

10. Verify that the Application Domain allocation completed.

A confirmation panel is displayed at the top of the I/O Domains screen. The State column displays the status of the allocation.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' management interface. At the top, a green checkmark icon indicates a successful allocation. Below this, a message states: 'The new IO Domain finance has been successfully allocated. Please contact your Network Administrator to ensure that the following host and IP information be added to DNS: Management Network: finance 9.75.154 Client Network: finance-client 9.79.9'. Below the message is a table titled 'List of IO Domains' with columns: Hostname, Domain Type, Physical Host, Owner, RAC ID, Zones, State, and Details. The table contains four rows: 'marketing' (Oracle Database Domain, M8 PDOM 1, admin, 1, 0, Resources Allocated), 'sales' (Oracle Database Domain, M8 PDOM 1, admin, 1, 0, Resources Allocated), 'research' (Oracle Database Zone Domain, M8 PDOM 1, admin, n/a, 0, Resources Allocated), and 'finance' (Solaris 11 Application Domain, M8 PDOM 1, admin, n/a, 0, Resources Allocated). Below the table is another section titled 'List of SCAN Address Groups' with an 'Edit' button and a table with columns: Hostname, Address 1, Address 2, Address 3, VLAN Tag, Owner, and RAC ID. The table contains one row: 'io-scan-25' with addresses 9.79.3, 9.79.4, 9.79.5, VLAN Tag 111, Owner admin, and RAC ID 1.

11. Add the management and client networks to DNS.

The network host names and IP addresses are displayed in the confirmation panel in the I/O Domains screen, and are available when you view the domain's details.

12. Consider your next action.

- Deploy the Domain – See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview” on page 21](#).
- Monitor activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163](#).

▼ Create an I/O Domain With an OVM Template (Deprecated)

This feature is no longer available as of SuperCluster version 3.0 (or later). The following procedure applies to SuperCluster version 2.6 or earlier.

Note - This procedure assumes that an administrator has added an OVM Template to the assistant. See [“Upload an OVM Template \(Deprecated\)” on page 87](#).

You can use a recipe to assign the amount of resources to the domain, or you can define the resources on the fly. If you plan to use a recipe, it must exist before you perform this procedure. See [“Choose an I/O Domain Creation Method” on page 91](#).

The domain is not installed and available until you deploy it. When you deploy the domain, the OS and the application associated with the template are installed and configured. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

The assistant does not allow you to assign more resources than are available.

Note - If you plan to change CPU and memory allocations for dedicated domains with the `osc-setcoremem` tool, do so before you configure any domains. Refer to the Administration Guide for your SuperCluster model (for example, [“Configuring CPU and Memory Resources \(osc-setcoremem\)” in Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7 Administration Guide](#)).

1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).

2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.

3. Click Add.

The screenshot shows a window titled "IO Domains" with a sub-header "Create a New IO Domain". Below the sub-header are three dropdown menus:

- Domain Type: Solaris 11 Application Domain
- Resource Recipe: -- Choose an option --
- Network Recipe: -- Choose an option --

At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "Next" and "Cancel".

4. Define these parameters to create a domain with an OVM template.

- **Domain Type** – Choose an OVM template. If templates are available, they are listed under the OVM Template Domains separator.
- **Resource Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - A Small, Medium, Large, or any other recipe – See [“Managing Recipes and Templates” on page 79](#).
 - Custom – Enter resource allocations for cores, memory, and 10GbE interfaces. See [Step 5](#).

Note – If you want to assign a 10GbE NIC port pair to the I/O Domain, you must use this method. For information about port pairs, see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)” on page 53](#).
- **Network Recipe** – Choose one of these options:
 - One of the network recipes – See [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#).
 - Custom Recipe – Enter the network parameters.

5. If you selected Custom Resource Recipe, define these resources and click Next.

- **Number of Cores** – Choose a minimum of one core for domain.

- **Memory** – Choose a minimum of 16 GB Memory for this domain.
 - **Number of 10GbE Interfaces** – Choose up to two 10GbE interfaces for this Domain.
 - **Number of FC ports** – Choose up to two assignable fibre channel ports for this domain.
6. **If you selected Custom Network Recipe for the network, define these resources and click Next.**
- **Domain Name** – Type domain name, such as example.com, for this domain.
 - **Name Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of name servers for this domain.
 - **Time Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of time servers for this domain.
 - **Time Zone** – Choose a time zone for this domain.
7. **Review the resources and click Next.**

Note - If you requested more resources than are available, the assistant highlights the resources that are not available.

Domains ⓘ

Create a New IO Domain

Domain Type:

Resource Recipe:

Network Recipe:

Comparison of the selected Default Recipe with the user's allowance and available resources

Resource	Recipe	User Allowance	M7 PDOM 1	M7 PDOM 2
Cores	2	Unrestricted	Total: 121 Available: 110	Total: 122 Available: 122
Memory	32 GB	Unrestricted	Total: 864 GB Available: 736 GB	Total: 864 GB Available: 864 GB
10Gb Interfaces	1	Unrestricted	Total: 128 Available: 123	Total: 128 Available: 128

8. Choose a physical host and add network information.

Create a new IO Domain

Create a New IO Domain

Domain Type: Weblogic 12.1.3 Sol 11.3 b22

Resource Recipe: Small (admin) !

Network Recipe: default (admin) !

Physical Host: ▼

Management Network: ▼ !

Management Hostname: !

Network Endpoint: ▼

Client (10Gb) Network: ▼ !

Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag: ▼ !

Client (10Gb) Hostname: !

Storage IB Network: ▼ !

Storage IB Hostname: !

OVM Template Properties

Admin Password: !

Startmode: !

Adminserver Ip: !

Back
Allocate
Cancel

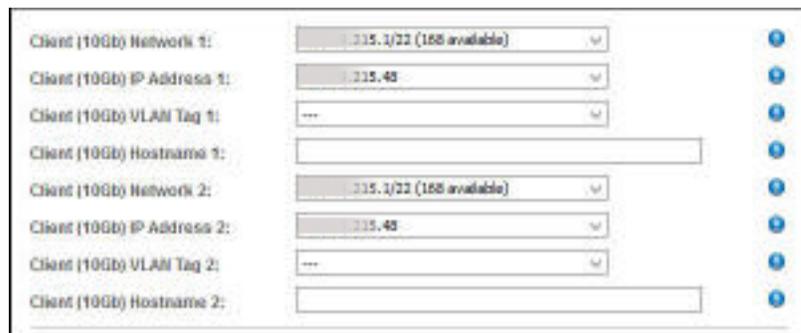
Configure these parameters:

- **Physical Host** – Choose the compute node where this domain will reside.

- Management Network** – You can select the Management Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Management Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Management Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Management Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Management interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If the I/O Domain has two Management Interfaces, then each of those Management Interfaces can use any Management Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.
- Management Hostname** – Type a unique name for this domain.
- Network Endpoint** – This option is only displayed when port pairs are configured (see [“Configure Port-Paired Networks \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 53).
 If port pairs are configured, select the network endpoint that you want the I/O Domain to use.



- Client (10Gb) Network** – You can select the Client Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Client Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Client (10Gb) Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Client Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Client (10Gb) interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If an I/O Domain has two Client Interfaces, then each of those Client Interfaces can use any Client Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.



- Client (10Gb) Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the client network for this domain.

- **Client (10Gb) IP Address** – Displayed only if the IP Address assignment is set to manual. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#). When this setting is enabled, you see a drop-down list of IP Addresses from the selected Client (10Gb) Network and you can select the desired IP Address.
- **Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag** – This field is always present on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by - - -.
- **Storage IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured, the IP address might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose an available IP address for the ZFS Storage Network. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)” on page 36](#).
- **OVM Template Properties** – Parameters that might be displayed here are based on information specified in the OVM template. For more information, see [“Upload an OVM Template \(Deprecated\)” on page 87](#).

9. Click Allocate to create the domain using an OVN template.

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant reserves the system resources but does not deploy the configuration. You can deploy the domain at your convenience. See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

This process takes time. Watch the status in the I/O Domain screen and check the queue for progress.

If the assistant detects a resource configuration issue, the assistant displays a message:

- Insufficient resources. For example:

```
Insufficient Unallocated Cores available on the chosen Compute Node. 10 Requested,
8 Remaining
```

- Configurations that might have performance issues. For example:

```
Error: VF allocation requires dedicated core in the same locality group for
performance reasons.
requested core count: 1 optimal core count based on number of requested VFs: 2
```

If you receive one of these messages, click Cancel and configure a new domain using a recipe that requests fewer or different resources.

10. Verify that the domain allocation completed.

A confirmation panel is displayed at the top of the I/O Domains screen. The State column displays the status of the allocation.

Note - Domains that are created from an OVM template might take extra time to reach the *Resources Allocated* state because additional application installation and configuration activities are performed.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' management interface. At the top, a green checkmark indicates that a new IO Domain 'WLogic01' has been successfully allocated. Below this, a message asks the user to contact their Network Administrator to add host and IP information to DNS. Two fields are provided: 'Management Network: WLogic01' and 'Client Network: WLogic01-client'. Below the message is a 'List of IO Domains' table with columns for ID, Hostname, Domain Type, Physical Host, Owner, RAC ID, State, and Details. The table contains 10 rows of domain information. Below the table is a 'List of SCAN Address Groups' table with columns for Hostname, Address 1, Address 2, Address 3, Owner, and RAC ID. It contains one row for 'io-scan-2'.

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
5	fred	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDom 1	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View
6	db-test-1	Oracle Database Domain	M7 PDom 2	admin	1	Ready for Use	View
7	app-test-1	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDom 1	admin	n/a	Ready for Use	View
8	db01-mgt	Oracle Database Domain	M7 PDom 1	admin	1	Resources Allocated	View
9	app01-mgt	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDom 2	admin	n/a	Resources Allocated	View
10	WLogic01	Weblogic 12.1.3 Sol 11.3 b22	M7 PDom 1	admin	n/a	Resources Allocated	View

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	Owner	RAC ID
io-scan-2				admin	1

11. Add the management and client networks to DNS.

The network host names and IP addresses are displayed in the confirmation panel in the I/O Domains screen, and available when you view the domain's details.

12. Consider your next action.

- Deploy the domain – See “[Deploy an I/O Domain](#)” on page 133.
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See “[Domain Configuration Task Overview](#)” on page 21.
- Monitor activity – See “[Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health](#)” on page 163.

▼ Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources

Note - This feature is only available in the version of the assistant that is provided in branch 2.1.0.813 or later. See [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#). The feature is also available if you have installed the April 2016 (or later) quarterly full stack download patch.

You can increase or decrease the cores and memory in a domain by editing the domain resources. You can edit a domain that is deployed, or not yet deployed. Based on the state of the domain and the type of changes you make, the assistant provides you the option of making the changes immediately or later.

Users with the administrator role can edit any domain. Users with the user role can only edit domains they own.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).

- 2. If you plan to apply changes immediately, determine if you need to prepare the domain for a shut down.**

Based on what you plan to do, you might need to shutdown applications and the OS because the assistant might shut down domain to complete the resource change.

- **Increase resources** – these domain shutdown requirements apply according to the version of the SuperCluster software:
 - As of SuperCluster v2.5 or later, in most cases you can increase domain resources without stopping the domain. However, if the domain has a resource constraint and the domain is already assigned the maximum amount of resources, then the domain is shutdown.
 - Prior to SuperCluster v2.5, You must gracefully stop any applications that are running, shut down the OS. By confirming the action to add cores or memory in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, the domain is stopped (if running) from the Control Domain.
- **Decrease resources** – You must gracefully stop any applications that are running, shut down the OS. By confirming the action to add cores or memory in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, the domain is stopped (if running) from the Control Domain.

- 3. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**

- 4. Select the domain and click Edit.**

- **Domain Details** – Lists the host name, state, and type.

- **Constraints** – Shows the minimum resource requirements for the domain type. If the active user has a resource allowance, then that user's allowed and available core and memory totals are also displayed.
- **Fixed Resources** – Displays the total resources (including the exact core identifiers and memory segments) that are fixed for this domain. Fixed resources cannot be removed.
- **Active Resources** – Shows the total cores and memory (including exact core identifiers and memory segments) that are currently allocated to this domain.

5. Under **Edit Resources**, change the number of cores and memory allocated to this domain.

Constraints

Minimum Cores per Domain Type:	1
Minimum Memory per Domain Type:	16 GB

Fixed Resources

Number of Cores:	2
Cores:	184, 248
Memory:	32 GB
Memory Segments:	131120G:16G, 196656G:16G

Active Resources

Number of Cores:	2
Cores:	184, 248
Memory:	32 GB
Memory Segments:	131120G:16G, 196656G:16G

Edit Resources

Please use the form below to specify the new resource values for this IO Domain.

Cores:

Memory:

Activate Now
Activate Later
Cancel

- **Increasing resources** – Additional resources must be available on the compute node and within your resource allowance (if you have a resource allowance).
- **Decreasing resources** – Can only be done if the domain currently has more resources than the minimum required for the domain type.

6. **Save your changes according to the instructions in the following table.**

Choose one of the displayed buttons, which varies based on the state of the domain and the type of changes you made. This table lists the possibilities.

Note - If the domain is not shut down before you make changes to the resources, the assistant warns you and performs the shutdown. The domain is automatically restarted after the reallocation.

On Undeployed Domains	On Deployed Domains (v2.5 or later)	On Deployed Domains (Prior to v2.5)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Alter Reservation – Changes take effect immediately. The updated I/O Domain Details screen is displayed. ■ Cancel – Cancels the changes and returns to the I/O Domains screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activate Now – If decreasing resources, a shutdown warning is displayed. The changes are placed in a queue while the assistant performs the necessary operations to increase or decrease resources. The I/O Domain Details screen is displayed, showing the pending resource alterations. To check the progress, on the details screen, under General Info, watch the State value. After a few minutes, the state indicates <i>Ready for Use</i>. You can also check the queue. ■ Activate Later – An alteration record is created that contains the details of the changes. The I/O Domain Details screen is displayed showing the pending alterations. When you are ready to activate the changes, see Step 7. Note - The alteration record remains in the pending state up to 120 hours (five days). After that time, the record is deleted and cannot be activated. ■ Cancel – Cancels the changes and returns to the main I/O Domains screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activate Now – After a shutdown warning, the changes are placed in a queue while the assistant performs the necessary operations to increase or decrease resources. The I/O Domain Details screen is displayed, showing the pending resource alterations. To check the progress, on the details screen, under General Info, watch the State value. After a few minutes, the state indicates <i>Ready for Use</i>. You can also check the queue. ■ Activate Later – An alteration record is created that contains the details of the changes. The I/O Domain Details screen is displayed showing the pending alterations. When you are ready to activate the changes, see Step 7. Note - The alteration record remains in the pending state up to 120 hours (five days). After that time, the record is deleted and cannot be activated. ■ Cancel – Cancels the changes and returns to the main I/O Domains screen.

7. If you chose to activate the changes later, initiate the resource changes at a convenient time.

In the I/O Domain Details screen, click Perform, Edit, or Cancel in the Pending Resource Alterations section.

8. Consider your next action.

- Monitor deployment activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163](#).

- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview”](#) on page 21.

▼ Transform a Database Domain Into a Database Zone Domain

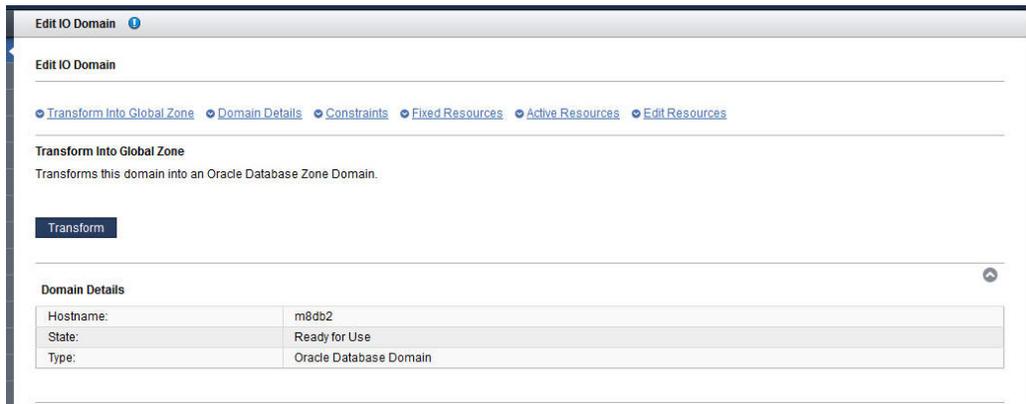
You can transform an existing Database I/O Domain into a Database Zone I/O Domain. You might perform this action if you created a Database Domain and decide that rather than installing and running Oracle Database software in the global zone, you want to create non-global Database Zones, and install and run Oracle Database software in the Database Zones.



Caution - Transforming a Database I/O Domain to a Database Zone I/O Domain should only be performed if there is no Oracle Database software installed the global zone. The process of transforming the I/O Domain removes the RAC association of the former Database Domain, and also removes the Exadata VIP (Client) IP Address.

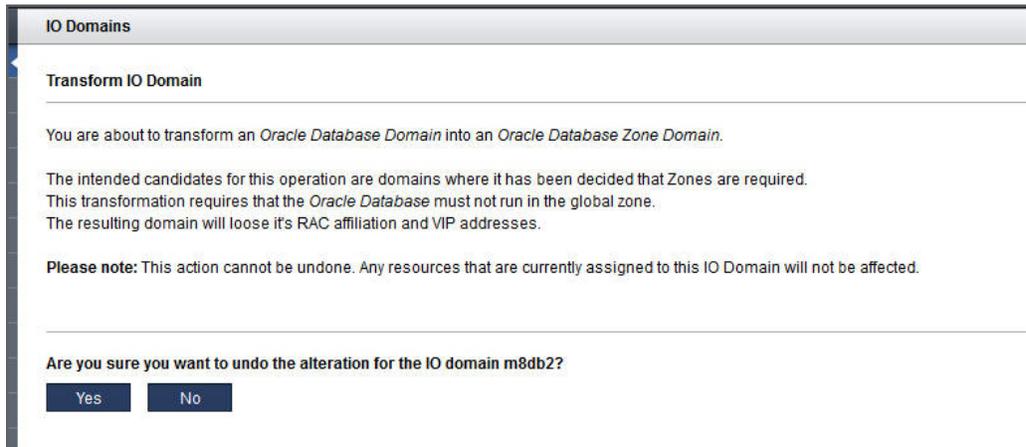
1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
3. **Select the check box next to the Database Domain you want to transform and click Edit.**

4. Click **Transform** to change the domain you selected into a **Database Zone Domain**.



5. Click **Yes**.

The transformation removes the RAC association, as well as the Exadata VIP address from the I/O Domains. After you click Yes, the original Database I/O Domain cannot be restored.



▼ Deploy an I/O Domain

After you configure a domain, deploy it so that the OS is installed and the domain is available to use.

Note - If the assistant fails to permit you to deploy a domain, check for possible issues. See [“Monitor SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health \(Administrators Only\)”](#) on page 165.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
- 2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
- 3. Select the domain you want to deploy and click Deploy.**
You can select one or more domains to deploy.

IO Domains

Deploy IO Domains

Listed below are the IO Domain(s) that you have chosen to deploy.
IO Domain deployment will happen in multiple stages and progress can be tracked via the Queue section.

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State
67	marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	Resources Allocated
68	sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	Resources Allocated
69	research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	Resources Allocated
70	finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	Resources Allocated

Are you sure you want to deploy the listed IO Domains as a new deployment group?

- 4. Click Yes to deploy the domain.**
Deployments can take time. The length of time depends on the size and configuration of the domain. You can see the progress in the State column. See [“View I/O Domains”](#) on page 95.
Click Refresh to watch the progress of the deployment. You can also monitor the deployment in the queue. See [“Monitor Current Activity”](#) on page 163.
- 5. Verify that the I/O Domain is deployed.**

Check the state in the IO Domains page. This example shows that the deployed domain called west is Ready for Use.

The screenshot displays the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface for the IO Domains page. At the top, there are navigation links for 'About', 'Refresh', and 'Logout'. Below the navigation bar, a message states: 'The io domain marketing was queued for deployment in task 39 by admin', 'The io domain sales was queued for deployment in task 39 by admin', 'The io domain research was queued for deployment in task 39 by admin', and 'The io domain finance was queued for deployment in task 39 by admin'. The main content area is titled 'List of IO Domains' and contains a table with the following data:

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Queued for Deployment	View
sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Queued for Deployment	View
research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Queued for Deployment	View
finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Queued for Deployment	View

Below the IO Domains table, there is a section for 'List of SCAN Address Groups' with a table containing the following data:

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
io-scan-25	10.129.79.3	10.129.79.4	10.129.79.5	111	admin	1

6. Ensure that the software is up to date with the latest SRUs and CIs.

The assistant installs the OS, but might not install required [SRU](#) or Solaris [CI](#) software. For details about SRU and CI installation, log into My Oracle Support at <https://support.oracle.com>, and refer to these knowledge articles:

- *Oracle SuperCluster Supported Software Versions - All Hardware Types (Doc ID 1567979.1)*
- *SuperCluster Critical Issues (Doc ID 1452277.1)*
- *SuperCluster- Solaris 11 Support Repository Updates (SRU) and SuperCluster specific IDR Support Matrix (Doc ID 2086278.1).*

7. (Platinum Monitored Systems) Create platinum infrastructure services for each new domain you create.

For instructions, log into <https://support.oracle.com>, and follow the instructions in the MOS knowledge article called *How to Create Platinum Infrastructure Services SR (Doc ID 2086278.1)*. For the Engineered System and Target, choose SuperCluster. For problem type, choose Agent Management.

8. Consider your next action.

- Configure one or more zones on a Database Zone Domain – See [“Configuring Zones”](#) on page 137.

- Install the Oracle Database on a Database Domain or a Database Zone – See [“Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone”](#) on page 233.
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview”](#) on page 21.

▼ Export an I/O Domains Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager

Use this procedure to generate a text file that can be imported into Oracle Enterprise Manager.

This action is helpful when you want Oracle Enterprise Manager to discover your domains and zone information. For more information on zones, see [“Configure a Database Zone”](#) on page 137 and [“Export a Zones Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 142.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
3. **Select the check box next to one or more domains.**
4. **Click Export for EM.**
5. **If your browser asks you how to handle the file, choose Save File and save it to the directory of your choice.**

By default, the file is named `em-agent-bulk-load.txt`.

Example of file contents:

```
DB01.zzz.yyy
```

6. **Consider your next action.**
 - Install Oracle Database on a Domain – See [“Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone”](#) on page 233.
 - Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See [“Domain Configuration Task Overview”](#) on page 21.
 - View domains – See [“View I/O Domains”](#) on page 95.
 - View resources – See [“View System Resources”](#) on page 45.

- Monitor activity – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health” on page 163](#).
- Create zones – See [“Configuring Zones” on page 137](#).

Configuring Zones

The Oracle Solaris Zones feature is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.

The zones software provides a method to virtualize OS services to create an isolated environment for running applications. This isolation prevents processes that are running in one zone from monitoring or affecting processes running in other zones. Database Zones are currently the only type of zones that can be configured with the assistant in a Database Zone Domain.

Creating multiple zones on different Database Zone Domains allows you to cluster the zones for redundancy and failover.

Database Zones reside on the Database Zone Domain. You configure Database Zones one at a time, but you can add multiple Database Zones to a single Database Zone Domain. Use the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant to configure a zone. After the zone configuration, use OEDA to install the Oracle Database in the zone (see [“Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone” on page 233](#), [“Creating Database Configuration Files \(OEDA\)” on page 239](#), and [“Installing Databases on a Database Domain” on page 263](#).)

Tip - Adding a Database Zone to an Application Domain is not supported.

- [“Configure a Database Zone” on page 137](#)
- [“Export a Zones Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager” on page 142](#)
- [“Delete Zone Configuration Information” on page 145](#)

▼ Configure a Database Zone

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Zones.**

A list of configured zones and configured SCAN Address Groups appears. These configured zones originate from the I/O Domains tab.

3. Click Add to configure a new zone.

4. Define these parameters.

- **Global Zone** – Choose the domain name from the list of Global Zones.
- **Zone Type** – Choose Database Zone.
- **Network Recipe** – Select a network recipe:
 - One of the network recipes. See [“Create a Network Recipe” on page 84](#).
 - Custom Network Recipe – Define these parameters:
 - **Domain Name** – Type the domain name, such as `example.com`, for this zone.
 - **Name Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of name servers for this zone.
 - **Time Servers** – Type a list of comma or space-separated IP addresses of time servers for this zone.
 - **Time Zone** – Choose a time zone for this zone.
- **RAC ID** – If you chose Database Zone as the Zone Type, choose the RAC ID where this zone will belong. An existing RAC ID contains the settings from the initial installation (client networks, network recipes and VLAN tags). Oracle SuperCluster supports a maximum of eight [RAC](#) databases.



Caution - If you are configuring an additional zone that will be part of an existing RAC, you must choose the same RAC ID that you used for the other zone.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface for creating a new zone. The navigation sidebar on the left includes options like IO Domains, Zones, Dedicated Domains, Recipes, Network Resources, Physical Hosts, Queue (1), Users and Allowances, Settings, Management Agents, and Health Monitor. The 'Zones' section is active, displaying the 'Create a New Zone' form. The form includes the following fields:

- Global Zone:** A dropdown menu with 'research' selected.
- Zone Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Database Zone' selected.
- Network Recipe:** A dropdown menu with '-- Choose an option --' selected.
- RAC ID:** A dropdown menu with '2' selected.

At the bottom of the form, there are 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons.

5. **Click Next.**

6. **Define these parameters.**

- **Management Network** – You can select the Management Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Management Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Management Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Management Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Management interfaces will be configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If the I/O Domain has two Management Interfaces, then each of those Management Interfaces can use any Management Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.
- **Management Hostname** – Type a unique name for this zone.
- **Client (10Gb) Network** – You can select the Client Network from which to assign an IP Address. All Client Networks defined in the Added Network Resources table of the Network Resources page with sufficient free IP Addresses can be selected. If the Resource Recipe for the I/O Domain that you are configuring contains two Client (10Gb) Interfaces, you will see two sets of inputs in order to provide two entries for the Client Network, IP Address, VLAN Tag, and Hostname. In this case, two Client (10Gb) interfaces will be

configured in the I/O Domain after it has been deployed. If an I/O Domain has two Client Interfaces, then each of those Client Interfaces can use any Client Network with sufficient available IP Addresses.

Client (10Gb) Network 1:	115.1/22 (168 available)	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) IP Address 1:	115.45	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag 1:	---	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) Hostname 1:		ⓘ
Client (10Gb) Network 2:	115.1/22 (168 available)	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) IP Address 2:	115.45	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag 2:	---	ⓘ
Client (10Gb) Hostname 2:		ⓘ

For more information, see [“Add VLAN Tags \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 56.

- **Client (10Gb) IP Address** – Displayed only if the IP Address assignment is set to manual. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36. When this setting is enabled, you see a drop-down list of IP Addresses from the selected Client (10Gb) Network and you can select the desired IP Address.
- **Client (10Gb) VLAN Tag** – This field is always present on the I/O Domain configuration page, even if you did not define any VLAN tags in the Network Resources section. The default is no VLAN tag, which is indicated by - - -.
- **Client (10Gb) Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the client network for this zone.
- **Storage IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured, the IP address might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose an available IP address for the ZFS Storage Network for this zone. See [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36.
- **Storage IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the ZFS storage hostname for this zone.
- **Exadata IB Network** – Depending how the assistant is configured (see [“Configure How IP Addresses are Assigned \(Administrators\)”](#) on page 36), the IP address might be automatically assigned or you might be able to choose an available IP address for the Exadata network for this zone.
- **Exadata IB Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name to the Exadata host name for this zone.
- **VIP Hostname** – Use the default, or type a unique name for the virtual IP network hostname for this zone.

For example:

Zones ?

Create a New Zone

Global Zone:	research	
Global Zone Type:	IO Domain (Oracle Database Zone Domain)	
Zone Type:	Database Zone	
Network Recipe:	default (admin)	?
RAC ID:	2	
<hr/>		
Management Network:	19.75.151/22 (41 available) ▼	?
Management IP Address:	19.75.155 ▼	?
Management Hostname:	zone1	?
<hr/>		
Client (10Gb) Network:	19.79.1/22 (91 available) ▼	?
Client (10Gb) IP Address:	19.79.10 ▼	?
Client (10Gb) Primary VLAN Tag:	----- ▼	?
Client (10Gb) Hostname:	zone1-client	?
<hr/>		
Storage IB Network:	18.33.1/22 (251 available) ▼	?
Storage IB Hostname:	zone1-storib	?
<hr/>		
Exadata IB Network:	18.9.1/22 (252 available) ▼	?
Exadata IB Hostname:	zone1-priv1	?
<hr/>		
VIP IP Address:	19.79.11 ▼	?
VIP Hostname:	zone1-vip	?

Back
Create
Cancel

7. Click Create to configure a new zone.

The Zones screen appears again, with a list of configured zones and configured SCAN Address Groups. A note at the top of this screen provides DNS information for the new zone that you just configured. This example shows two Database Zones that are part of a single RAC.

The screenshot displays the 'Zones' configuration page in Oracle Enterprise Manager. At the top, a green checkmark indicates that the new zone 'zone1' has been successfully configured. A note below this message asks the user to contact their Network Administrator to ensure that the following host and IP information be added to DNS:

Management Network: zone1 192.75.155
Client Network: zone1-client 192.79.10
 zone1-vip 192.79.11
 zone-scan-1 192.79.12 192.79.13 192.79.14

Below the confirmation message, there are two tables:

List of Zones

Hostname	Zone Type	Global Zone	Global Zone Type	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
zone1	Database Zone	research	ID Domain	admin	2	Resources Allocated	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
zone-scan-1	192.79.12	192.79.13	192.79.14		admin	2

8. Add the management and client networks to DNS.

The network host names and IP addresses are displayed in the confirmation panel in the Zones screen, and available when you view the zone's details.

9. Consider your next action.

- Configure additional zones for RAC – See “[Configure a Database Zone](#)” on page 137.
- Install the Oracle Database on the database zones that you just configured – See “[Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone](#)” on page 233.
- Export zone information to Oracle Enterprise Manager – See “[Export a Zones Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)” on page 142.
- Remove a zone's configuration information – See “[Delete Zone Configuration Information](#)” on page 145.

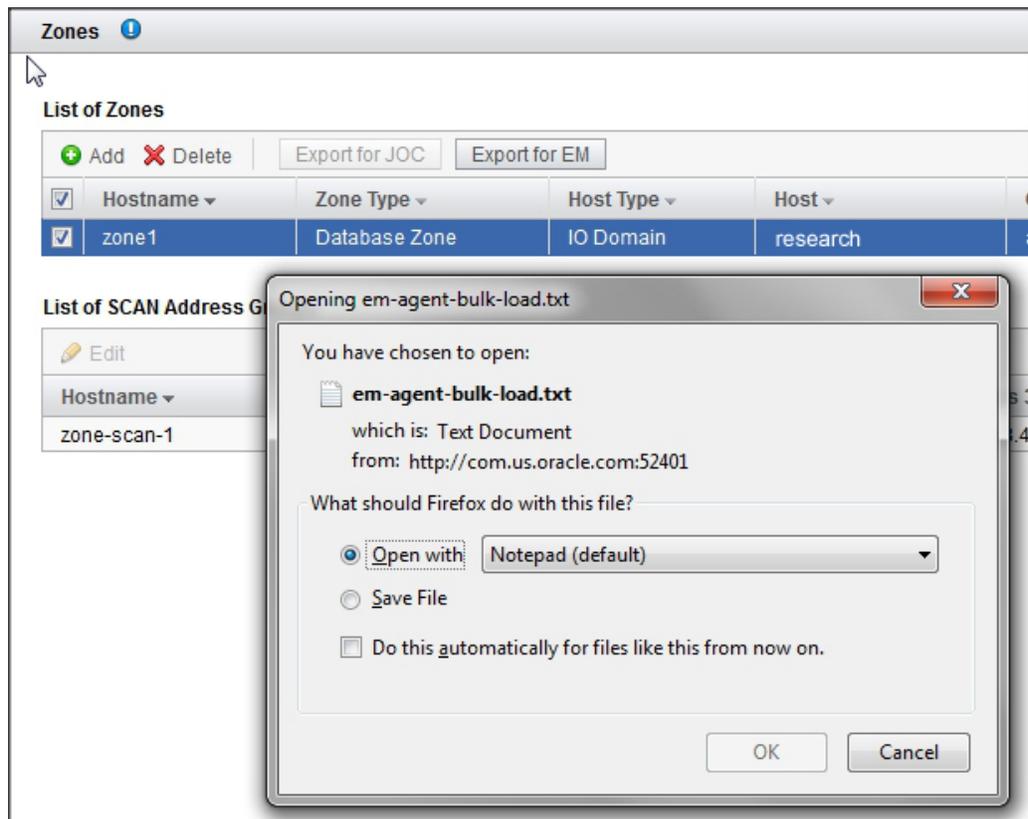
▼ Export a Zones Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager

Use this procedure to generate a text file that can be imported into Oracle Enterprise Manager.

This action is helpful when you want Oracle Enterprise Manager to discover your zones and domains. For more information on domains, see [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains” on page 91](#) and [“Export an I/O Domains Text File to Oracle Enterprise Manager” on page 135](#).

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
- 2. In the navigation panel, select Zones.**
- 3. Select the check box next to one or more zones.**
- 4. Click Export for EM.**

5. If your browser asks you how to handle the file, choose **Save File** and save it to the directory of your choice.



By default, the file is named `em-agent-bulk-load.txt`.

Example of file contents:

```
DB01.zzz.yyy
```

6. Consider your next action.
 - Move a Domain – See [“Relocating Domains with Freeze and Thaw”](#) on page 147.
 - Remove a zone's configuration from the assistant – See [“Delete Zone Configuration Information”](#) on page 145.

- Export an XML file to provide database configuration information – See [“Export an XML Configuration File”](#) on page 240.

▼ Delete Zone Configuration Information

Removing a zone from a Database Zone Domain removes the zone configuration information from the assistant.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select Zones.**
3. **Select the check box next to the zone whose configuration you want to remove and click Delete.**
4. **Click Yes to remove the configuration information for this zone.**

Zones

Delete Zones

You have chosen to delete the Zone(s) shown below.
This action cannot be undone and will delete the Zone(s), if deployed, and release all resources used by

List of Zones to Destroy

Hostname	Zone Type	Host Type	Host
zone1	Database Zone	IO Domain	research

Are you sure you want to delete the selected Zones?

Tip - After you remove the zone's configuration from its I/O Domain, you should remove the deleted zone's host and IP information from DNS.

5. Consider your next action.

- Relocate a domain – See [“Relocating Domains with Freeze and Thaw”](#) on page 147.
- View resources – See [“Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health”](#) on page 163.

Relocating Domains with Freeze and Thaw

This feature is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.3.

You can move Database and Application I/O Domains from one physical host to another with the freeze and thaw feature. You can also use the feature if you want to temporarily suspend an I/O Domain and have the CPU, memory, and network resources that were being used by that I/O Domain made available to other I/O Domains:

- **Freeze** – Saves the I/O Domain configuration information, suspends (freezes) the I/O Domain, and returns CPU, memory, and network resources to the pool and can be used to deploy other domains. The storage and data associated with the I/O Domain are preserved, and are returned to the I/O Domain when the I/O Domain is thawed. At any time, the frozen I/O Domain can be thawed, at which point resources are reassigned to the I/O Domain, and it is brought back to the Ready for Use state.

In some cases, additional auxiliary iSCSI LUNs might be associated with an I/O Domain, for example to provide cluster quorum devices or file systems for zones in I/O Domains. The freeze function preserves the auxiliary iSCSI LUNs, but the assistant only enables you to thaw such I/O Domains on physical hosts that can access the auxiliary iSCSI LUNs.

You can edit the I/O Domain while it is frozen. This enables you to increase or decrease the amount of CPU and memory resources before you thaw the I/O Domain. See [“Edit a Frozen I/O Domain” on page 152](#).

- **Thaw** – Reconfigures the I/O Domain on the physical host that you specify, reassigns the same number of resources, re-establishes connectivity to the original storage resources, and brings the I/O Domain back to the Ready for Use state.

The assistant only enables you to thaw a frozen I/O Domain on physical hosts that have sufficient resources to host the I/O Domain.

In the case where a frozen I/O Domain has additional auxiliary iSCSI LUNs, there might be additional restrictions placed on the physical host on which the frozen I/O Domain can be thawed. Auxiliary iSCSI LUNs used to provide file systems for zones in I/O Domains are also thawed as part of this process, and any non-global zones hosted on auxiliary iSCSI LUNs return to the same state that they were in prior to the freeze action. Auxiliary iSCSI LUNs used to provide cluster quorum devices are also thawed, but might need some manual interaction to return them to the state they were in prior to the freeze action.

Users with the administrator role can freeze and thaw any I/O Domain. Users with the user role can only freeze and thaw I/O Domains they own.

These topics describe how to freeze and thaw an I/O Domain.

- [“Determine Resource Availability Before Relocation” on page 148](#)
- [“Freeze a Domain” on page 149](#)
- [“Edit a Frozen I/O Domain” on page 152](#)
- [“Thaw a Domain” on page 153](#)
- [“Verify the Relocation” on page 157](#)

▼ Determine Resource Availability Before Relocation

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **Identify the resources used by the I/O Domain in its current location.**
 - a. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
 - b. **For the I/O Domain you plan to move, under Details, click View.**

Resources	
 Edit	
Number of Cores:	2
Cores:	193, 248
Memory:	32 GB
Memory Segments:	201393408M:16G, 201409792M:16G
Number of IB VFs:	1
IB VFs:	/SYS/CMIOU3/PCIE3/IOVIB.PF0.VF1
Number of 10Gb VFs:	2
10Gb VFs:	/SYS/CMIOU3/PCIE2/IOVNET.PF0.VF1, /SYS/CMIOU3/PCIE2/IOVNET.PF1.VF1
Number of FC VFs:	0
FC VFs:	

- c. **In the Resources table, identify the amount of resources assigned to this I/O Domain.**
To move an I/O Domain, the new location must have at least the corresponding amount of resources available. Note these values:

- Number of cores
- Memory
- Number of IB VFs
- Number of 10Gb VFs
- Number of FC VFs

3. Ensure that enough resources are available on the other physical host.

- a. In the navigation panel, select Physical Hosts.**

Physical Host	Root Domains	Cores	Memory	IB Interfaces	10Gb Interfaces	FC Interfaces	Details
M7 PDOM 1	etc3m7-rootadm0103	Total: 30 Allocated: 4 Available: 26	Total: 208 GB Allocated: 64 GB Available: 144 GB	Total: 16 Allocated: 2 Available: 14	Total: 16 Allocated: 2 Available: 14	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	View
M7 PDOM 2	etc3m7-rootadm0203, etc3m7-rootadm0204	Total: 61 Allocated: 0 Available: 61	Total: 432 GB Allocated: 0 GB Available: 432 GB	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	Total: 32 Allocated: 0 Available: 32	Total: 16 Allocated: 0 Available: 16	View

- b. In the Physical Hosts page, ensure that the intended physical host has enough available resources to support the I/O Domain.**

4. Consider your next action.

- Freeze an I/O Domain – See [“Freeze a Domain” on page 149](#).
- Change the resources used by an I/O Domain – See [“Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources” on page 127](#).

▼ Freeze a Domain

Use this procedure to freeze an I/O Domain. This is typically performed when you want to move an I/O Domain from one physical host to another.

Note - When an I/O Domain is frozen, it is unavailable for use.

1. Shut down the domain that you plan to move.

To freeze a domain, the domain must be stopped. It is highly recommended that all applications running in the domain are gracefully stopped and that the OS running in the domain is shut down prior to freezing the domain. The freeze action will attempt to shutdown the OS gracefully initially. If that action does not work, a forced shutdown of the OS is performed.

2. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 41.

3. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.

4. Select the I/O Domain you plan to Freeze.

5. If you want to tie the domain you are freezing to the physical host, select the Pin this Domain check box.

The ability to pin a domain is available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.

Pinning a domain ensures that the domain can only be thawed on that specific host. If you have domains that run the Oracle Solaris Cluster software, always select this check box.

6. Click Yes to freeze the domain.

This example shows the confirmation screen with the tool tip expanded.

IO Domains

Freeze IO Domains

The *Freeze* function will destroy the LDom guest domain which provides cores, memory and networking resources for an IO Domain to run, but will preserve the underlying filesystems that are used by this IO Domain.

The implication of *Freeze* is that the cores, memory and networking resources are returned to the system and can be used to deploy other domains. At any stage in the future the *Frozen* IO Domain can be *Thawed*, at which point resources will be reassigned to the IO Domain and it will be brought back to the *Ready for Use* state.

In some cases, additional *Auxiliary iSCSI LUNs* may be associated with an IO Domain, for example to provide cluster quorum devices or filesystems for zones in IO Domains. The *Freeze* function will also preserve these *Auxiliary iSCSI LUNs*, but there may be implications for the *Physical Hosts* on which such IO Domains can be *Thawed*.

You have chosen to *Freeze* the IO Domains shown in the table below.
This will stop and release those IO Domain's resources. It is recommended that you perform a graceful shutdown of IO Domains prior to freezing them.
Frozen IO Domains can be *Thawed* at a later date if sufficient resources are available.

List of IO Domains to Freeze

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State
16	zebra	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	Ready for Use

Are you sure you want to freeze the selected IO Domains?

7. Click Yes to confirm the freeze operation.

The process takes a few minutes to complete. After the process completes, *Frozen* is displayed in the State column.

Tip - Click Refresh to ensure that the page reflects the most current state.

IO Domains

List of IO Domains

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
5	aardvark	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View
6	zebra	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	service	n/a	Frozen	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	Owner	RAC ID
No Scan Address Groups configured					

8. Consider your next action.

- Thaw a domain – See [“Thaw a Domain” on page 153](#).
- Edit the frozen I/O Domain's resources. See [“Edit a Frozen I/O Domain” on page 152](#)
- Verify the freeze operation – See [“Monitor Past Activity \(Administrators Only\)” on page 164](#).

▼ Edit a Frozen I/O Domain

Starting with the SuperCluster Q3.2021 update patch (branch number 3.2.0.2036 or later of the assistant), you can edit an I/O Domain while it is frozen. This enables you to increase or decrease the amount of CPU and memory resources before you thaw the I/O Domain. Decreasing resources is necessary if the previous amount of resources are no longer available.

For information about identifying your version of SuperCluster software, see [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#).

Note - You cannot edit the number of zones while the I/O Domain is frozen. To edit the number of zones, the I/O Domain must be active on the system.

Use this procedure to edit a frozen I/O Domain.

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
- 2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
- 3. Select the frozen I/O Domain.**
- 4. Click Edit.**
The Edit IO Domain page is displayed.
- 5. At the bottom of the page, select the number of cores and memory.**
- 6. Click Alter Reservation.**
When the I/O Domain is thawed, it will have the resources that you selected.
- 7. Consider your next action.**
 - Thaw the I/O Domain. See [“Thaw a Domain” on page 153](#).

▼ Thaw a Domain

Use this procedure to thaw an I/O Domain that is frozen. This is performed when you want to take a domain from the Frozen state back to the Ready for Use state (with OS running).

- 1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
- 2. In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
- 3. Select the frozen I/O Domain.**
- 4. Click Thaw.**

The next screen enables you to choose a physical host for this I/O Domain. If you pinned an I/O domain to a host, the domain can only be thawed on that specific host. For more information, see [“Freeze a Domain” on page 149.](#)

If the assistant detects that any auxiliary ISCSI LUNs are associated with the I/O Domain, the assistant includes that information in the screen, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The top navigation bar includes 'About', 'Refresh', and 'Logout' buttons. The user is logged in as 'service' with the role of 'Administrator' and the language is set to 'en'. The left sidebar contains a 'NAVIGATION' menu with options: IO Domains, Recipes, OVM Templates, Network Resources, Physical Hosts, Deployment Queue, Users and Allowances, Settings, Health Monitor, System Log, and Profile. The main content area is titled 'IO Domains' and shows the 'Thaw an IO Domain' screen. The screen displays the following requirements for IO Domain 'zebra':

Cores:	2
Memory:	32
10Gb Interfaces:	1
IB Interfaces:	1
FC Interfaces:	0

Below the table, a note states: 'NOTE: This domain has Auxiliary ISCSI LUNs associated with it and as such may have additional restrictions placed on the Physical Host on which it can be thawed. (This is due to the location of the physical storage devices used by the Frozen IO Domain and the relationship between these Auxiliary ISCSI LUNs and the IO Domain before it entered the Frozen state.)' Below the note, a message asks the user to select a Physical Host to reinstate the Frozen IO Domain on. A dropdown menu shows 'M7PDOM 1' selected. At the bottom, there are 'Thaw' and 'Cancel' buttons.

This example shows the screen that is displayed when there are no auxiliary iSCSI LUNs associated with the I/O Domain.

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The main content area is titled "Thaw an IO Domain" and contains the following information:

You are attempting to thaw IO Domain **zebra** which has the following requirements:

Cores:	2
Memory:	32
10Gb Interfaces:	1
IB Interfaces:	1
FC Interfaces:	0

Please select which *Physical Host* you wish to reinstate the Frozen IO Domain on. Clicking **Thaw** will configure the IO Domain, by reserving the appropriate *Resource Allocation* on the selected *Physical Host* and using those resources to reinstate the Frozen IO Domain.

Physical Host:

Buttons: **Thaw** **Cancel**

5. Select a physical host from the drop-down menu.

Not all I/O domains can be thawed on all physical hosts for these reasons:

- If you pinned an I/O Domain to a physical host, that domain can only be thawed on that specific physical host. For more information, see [“Freeze a Domain” on page 149](#).
- You can only thaw an I/O Domain on a physical host that has sufficient available resources to accommodate the frozen I/O Domain.
- Some I/O Domains have auxiliary LUNs associated with them (for example, for zone file systems). These I/O Domains can only be thawed on physical hosts that have access to all auxiliary LUNs.

6. Click Thaw.

The process takes a few minutes to complete. Once complete, Ready for Use is displayed in the State column.

Tip - Click the Refresh button to ensure that the page reflects the most current state.

This example shows the state of the I/O Domain during the thaw process.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' management interface. At the top, there are two green checkmarks indicating successful operations: 'Domain Queued for Thaw Operation on Node 2' and 'New Deployment Group created for the IO Domains: zebra'. Below this, the 'List of IO Domains' section contains a table with the following data:

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
5	aardvark	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View
6	zebra	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 2	service	n/a	Queued for Thaw	View

The 'List of SCAN Address Groups' section below shows 'No Scan Address Groups configured'.

This example shows the state of the I/O Domain when the thaw is complete.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' management interface after the thaw process is complete. The 'List of IO Domains' table now shows the state of the domains:

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
5	aardvark	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View
6	zebra	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 2	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View

The 'List of SCAN Address Groups' section remains 'No Scan Address Groups configured'.

7. Consider your next action.

- Verify the freeze and thaw operation. See [“Verify the Relocation” on page 157](#).
- Change the resources used by an I/O Domain. See [“Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources” on page 127](#).

▼ Verify the Relocation

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
The Physical Host column shows the physical host of each I/O Domain.
The State column shows the state of the I/O Domain.

IO Domains

List of IO Domains

[Add](#)
[Edit](#)
[Delete](#)
[Deploy](#)
[Dequeue](#)
[Freeze](#)
[Thaw](#)
[Export for JOC](#)
[Export for EM](#)

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State	Details
5	aardvark	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 1	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View
6	zebra	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M7 PDOM 2	service	n/a	Ready for Use	View

List of SCAN Address Groups

[Edit](#)

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	Owner	RAC ID
No Scan Address Groups configured					

3. **In the navigation panel, select System Log.**
Review the log for the status of the freeze and thaw processes.

System Log

System Log Entries

Date / Time	Level	Message
2016-07-22 19:52:59	Removed old SP configuration iodct_2016-07-22.16:16:54.763747 on control domain	
2016-07-22 19:52:59	success	Removed old SP configuration iodct_2016-07-22.16:16:54.763747 on control domain
2016-07-22 19:52:58	success	Saved SP configuration iodct_2016-07-22.19:52:25.605046 on control domain
2016-07-22 19:52:25	info	Thawed IO Domain zebra
2016-07-22 19:45:14	info	The IO Domain zebra was queued for thawing as part of the Deployment Group 12.
2016-07-22 19:45:14	info	Allocated IO Domain (zebra) with the token: 3678101718, Small:Solaris 11 Application Domain
2016-07-22 19:33:47	info	Froze IO Domain zebra
2016-07-22 19:33:47	success	Removed old SP configuration iodct_2016-07-22.16:40:39.369676 on control domain
2016-07-22 19:33:45	success	Saved SP configuration iodct_2016-07-22.19:33:08.554237 on control domain

4. Consider your next action.

- Manage I/O Domains. See [“Creating and Deploying I/O Domains”](#) on page 91.
- Log out of the assistant. See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant”](#) on page 43.

Deleting Domains



Caution - Deleting a domain is permanent and cannot be undone. This action deletes the domain and releases all resources used by that domain. Any software on the domain is lost.



Caution - Ensure that you back up all existing data before performing the tasks in this section.

Users with the administrator role can delete any domain. Users with the user role can only delete domains they own.

Note - If the assistant fails to permit you to delete a domain, check for possible issues. See [“Monitor SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health \(Administrators Only\)” on page 165](#).

The procedures you perform to delete a domain differ based on the type of domain you plan to delete.

Description	Links
Delete an Application Domain	“Delete a Domain” on page 161
Delete one node of a Cluster and its associated domain.	“Delete a Single Node From a Cluster” on page 159 “Delete a Domain” on page 161
Delete all cluster nodes and the associated domains.	“Delete All Nodes in a Cluster” on page 160 “Delete a Domain” on page 161

▼ Delete a Single Node From a Cluster

Use this procedure to delete an individual node from a cluster before you delete the associated Database Domain.

1. **Delete the database instance from the clustered database.**

For instructions, refer to the [Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide](#).

2. Delete the node from the Oracle Grid infrastructure.

For instructions, refer to the [Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide](#).

3. Delete the Database Domain.

See [“Delete a Domain” on page 161](#).

Related Information

- [“Delete All Nodes in a Cluster” on page 160](#)
- [“Delete a Domain” on page 161](#)

▼ Delete All Nodes in a Cluster

Use this procedure to delete all the nodes in a cluster before you delete the associated Database I/O Domains.

In this scenario, you will delete all active members of a grid infrastructure resulting in the destruction of the whole cluster.

1. Identify the diskgroups and associated griddisks.

For example, identify the griddisk prefix in the output (DATAJNGZ and RECOJNGZ).

```
oracle@etc5mzdbadm030201:~$ asmcmd lsdk
Path
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/DATAJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/DATAJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/DATAJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/DATAJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/RECOJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/RECOJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/RECOJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.1;192.0.2.2/RECOJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm01
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/DATAJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/DATAJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/DATAJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/DATAJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/RECOJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/RECOJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/RECOJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm02
o/192.0.2.3;192.0.2.4/RECOJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm02
```

```
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/DATAJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/DATAJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/DATAJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/DATAJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/RECOJNGZ_FD_00_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/RECOJNGZ_FD_01_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/RECOJNGZ_FD_02_etc5mceladm03
o/192.0.2.5;192.0.2.6/RECOJNGZ_FD_03_etc5mceladm03
oracle@etc5mzdbadm030201:~$
```

2. **Delete the associated Database Domains, then return to [Step 3](#) in this procedure.**

See [“Delete a Domain” on page 161](#).

3. **Delete the griddisks from the storage cells.**

Log in to each cell and drop the griddisks. For example:

```
CellCLI> drop griddisk all prefix=RECOJNGZ force
```

Related Information

- [“Delete a Single Node From a Cluster” on page 159](#)
- [“Delete a Domain” on page 161](#)

▼ Delete a Domain

You might want to delete a domain in order to free up the resources that the domain uses. When a domain is deleted, the resources are returned to the resource pool.



Caution - If you delete an I/O domain, the deletion cannot be undone. This action deletes the domain and releases all resources used by that domain. Any software on the domain is lost.

If you are deleting a Database Domain, you must first delete the cluster nodes that are associated with the domain. See one of these procedures:

- [“Delete a Single Node From a Cluster” on page 159](#)
- [“Delete All Nodes in a Cluster” on page 160](#)



Caution - If the Database Domain or the Database Zone Domain contains zones, the zones are removed when you delete the domain. The zone's configuration information will also be removed from the assistant. You should remove the deleted zone's host and IP information from DNS.

1. **(Platinum Monitored Systems) Remove the I/O Domain from platinum infrastructure services.**

For instructions, log in to <https://support.oracle.com>, and read the MOS knowledge article called *How to Create Platinum Infrastructure Services SR (Doc ID 1958476.1)*.

2. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**

See “[Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#)” on page 41.

3. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**

4. **Select the check box next to the domain you want to remove and click Delete.**

IO Domains

Destroy IO Domains

You have chosen to destroy the IO Domain(s) shown below.
This action cannot be undone and will delete the IO Domain(s), if deployed, and release all resources used by it/them.

List of IO Domains to Destroy

ID	Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	State
1	research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M7 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	Resources Allocated

Warning: Some of the IO Domains selected for destruction contain zones.
By confirming this action, all zones listed below will also be destroyed:

List of Zones that will also be destroyed

Hostname	Zone Type	Host Type	Host	Owner	RAC ID	State
zone1	Database Zone	IO Domain	research	admin	1	Configured

Are you sure you want to destroy the selected IO Domains?

5. **Click Yes to remove the domain and any zones attached to the domain.**

After you remove the zone's configuration from its I/O Domain, you should remove the deleted zone's host and IP information from DNS.

6. **Consider your next action.**

- View Domains – See “[View I/O Domains](#)” on page 95.
- View resources – See “[View System Resources](#)” on page 45.
- Monitor activity – See “[Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health](#)” on page 163.
- Go to the Domain Configuration Task Overview – See “[Domain Configuration Task Overview](#)” on page 21.

Monitoring Activity, Resource Alterations, and Health

Use these topics to monitor the activity, resource allocations, and health of the SuperCluster:

- [“Monitor Current Activity” on page 163](#)
- [“Monitor Past Activity \(Administrators Only\)” on page 164](#)
- [“Monitor SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health \(Administrators Only\)” on page 165](#)
- [“Start or Stop a Management Agent” on page 168](#)
- [“Start or Stop an I/O Domain” on page 170](#)

▼ Monitor Current Activity

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select Queue (or Deployment Queue for earlier assistant versions).**

The screenshot shows the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant interface. The top navigation bar includes the Oracle logo, the title "SuperCluster Virtual Assistant", and buttons for "About", "Refresh", and "Logout". Below the navigation bar, the user information "User: admin » Role: Administrator » Language: en" is displayed. The main content area is titled "Queue" and shows the "Scheduler Status: Running (Awaiting next Task)". A table titled "Task Queue (1)" displays the following data:

Task	Date/Time Queued	State	Action	Hostname(s)	Queued By
39	2019-04-15 22:04:51	Queued	Deployment	marketing, sales, research, finance	admin

In this screen you can view the I/O Domains that are in the queue for deployment and the state of the deployment:

- Currently Deploying
- Deployment Complete
- Reread
- Queued for Deployment
- Saving LDom Configuration
- (Version 3.0) I/O Domain deletions
- (Version 3.0) Freeze and thaw operations

If multiple I/O Domains were deployed at the same time, they are grouped into one batch ID.

The Resource Alteration Queue displays the state and owner of I/O Domains that in the process of resource changes, or have pending changes (see [“Increase or Decrease I/O Domain Resources” on page 127](#)).

3. **Click I/O Domain name to view the I/O Domain details.**
4. **Consider your next action.**
 - Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20](#).
 - Go to the next task – See [“Monitor Past Activity \(Administrators Only\)” on page 164](#).
 - Deploy or Dequeue an I/O Domain – See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).
 - Log out – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43](#).

▼ Monitor Past Activity (Administrators Only)

You must have the administrator role to perform this procedure.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).

2. In the navigation panel, select System Log.

System Log		
System Log Entries		
Date / Time ^	Level v	Message v
2019-04-10 22:04:05	info	Removed old SP configuration iodct_2019-04-10.22:04:04 on control domain localhost
2019-04-10 22:04:05	info	Saved SP configuration iodct_2019-04-10.22:04:04.745902 on control domain localhost
2019-04-10 22:04:04	success	west: Installation completed successfully
2019-04-10 22:02:10	info	The io domain west was queued for deployment in task 36 by admin
2019-04-10 21:59:46	success	The user admin logged in successfully from 10.159.134.38
2019-04-10 19:01:09	info	The user admin allocated thenew IO Domain (south) with the token:1554919268, Medium:Solaris 11 Application Domain
2019-04-10 18:09:19	info	The user admin allocated thenew IO Domain (northeast) with the token:1554916158, Small:Oracle Database Domain
2019-04-10 17:32:35	info	The user admin allocated thenew IO Domain (northwest) with the token:1554913954, Small:Oracle Database Domain
2019-04-10 17:29:00	info	The user admin allocated thenew IO Domain (west) with the token:1554913739, Small:Solaris 11 Application Domain
2019-04-10 17:28:16	success	The user admin logged in successfully from 10.159.134.38
2019-04-10 09:11:16	info	Released IO Domain david
2019-04-10 09:11:16	info	Removed old SP configuration iodct_2019-04-10.09:11:16 on control domain localhost
2019-04-10 09:11:16	info	Saved SP configuration iodct_2019-04-10.09:11:16.066112 on control domain localhost
2019-04-10 09:10:54	info	The io domain david was queued for destruction in task 35 by admin

In this screen you can view timestamped SuperCluster Virtual Assistant log entries.

3. Consider your next action.

- Go to the Administrative Task Overview – See [“Administrative Task Overview” on page 20.](#)
- Monitor deployment activity – See [“Monitor Current Activity” on page 163.](#)
- Log out – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43.](#)

▼ Monitor SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health (Administrators Only)

Use the health monitor to monitor the status of the assistant and to manage any failures that might be detected. You must have the administrator role to perform this procedure.

The health monitor ensures that the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant remains in sync with SuperCluster subsystems and that the assistant has connectivity to applicable hosts.

If a failure is encountered, future I/O Domain deployment and destruction activities are disabled until all failures are cleared.

1. Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

See “Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.

2. In the navigation panel, select Health Monitor.

SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Health Monitor ⓘ

Scheduler Status: Running (Awaiting next Task)
Health Monitor Status: All health checks have passed

Latest Report (2017-05-25 16:07:57)

Clear Failure Force-run Health Check

<input type="checkbox"/> Health Check ▾	Result ▾	Status ▾	Details
<input type="checkbox"/> Validate the Service Processor Configuration	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Validate the Service Processor Configuration	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify Connectivity to Required Hosts	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Ensure storage appliance user and role are correctly configured	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Review IO Domains in Resources Allocated State	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify All Domains	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify the Resource Allocation Engine is Functioning	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Query the Resource Allocation Engine for Resource Changes	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify Infiniband functionality on all applicable Virtual Functions	Pass	Healthy	View
<input type="checkbox"/> Verify Oracle Virtual Template Library is correctly configured	Pass	Healthy	View

Resolved Health Check Failures and Warnings

Health Check ▾	Severity ▾	Date Found ▾	Date Resolved ▾	Cleared By ▾	Details
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-24 05:19:59	2017-05-24 05:19:59	Health Monitor	View
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-24 03:32:55	2017-05-24 03:32:55	Health Monitor	View
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-24 02:42:43	2017-05-24 02:42:43	Health Monitor	View
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-24 02:21:53	2017-05-24 02:21:53	Health Monitor	View
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-24 02:11:56	2017-05-24 02:11:56	Health Monitor	View
Verify Reservations in the Resource Allocation Engine	Warning	2017-05-19 11:57:10	2017-05-19 11:57:10	Health Monitor	View

The first table lists the latest report. The second table is a summary of the prior 20 warnings and failures. For a full list, click the link at the bottom of this screen.

A single Health Monitor report includes several individual health checks, with further details available for each health check.

Possible results:

- **Pass** – No issues detected.
- **Warning** – An issue was detected that was automatically resolved by the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.
- **Fail** – An issue was detected that requires human intervention. Look at the details, perform the provided actions to resolve the issue. Once resolved, clear the failure.

Note - Future I/O Domain deployment and destruction activities are disabled until all failures are cleared.

3. Run a health check by clicking Force-run Health Check.

Health checks are run at the next opportunity.

4. View health check details by clicking Details.

Example of details for a health check failure:

IO Domain Creation Tool Health Monitor

Health Check: Check for Unsanctioned Service Processor Configurations

The Service Processor configuration (*spconfig*) is a critical component of virtualized environments using *Oracle VM Server for SPARC* (LDom) technology. The *spconfig* stores metadata relating all domains on the system and the system resources that they are using. It is critical that the correct *spconfig* is running before creating or destroying IO Domains via the *IO Domain Creation Tool*.

This health check ensures that the current *spconfig* on each Physical Node with *Root Domains* installed is one that the *IO Domain Creation Tools* expects. Please be aware that other Health Check failures being reported may likely be a result of a change in service processor configuration, so please ensure that the running *spconfig* is the intended one before clearing any failures this Health Check may report.

Date executed: June 17, 2015, 9:13 p.m.
Result: Fail

Unexpected Service Processor Configuration (spconfig) found:
 An unexpected active *spconfig* has been detected on the Host `19.111.4`.

Expected Service Processor configuration	don_test_20150616
Active Service Processor configuration	-

The following actions have been taken:
 The scheduler has disabled the deployment and destruction of IO Domains until this issue is resolved.

The following actions need to be taken to resolve this issue:
 Please read the following instructions carefully, as it is important that the detected issue be resolved by taking the correct actions.

A choice needs to be made to determine which of the two *spconfigs* listed above (either the *Expected spconfig* or the *Active spconfig*) should be used when resuming the IO Domain creation and destruction.

If the *Active spconfig* is the correct *spconfig* to use, then by clearing the existing failure from the Health Monitor page, this *spconfig* will be promoted as the active *spconfig* and IO Domain creation/destruction will resume.

If the *Expected spconfig* is the correct *spconfig* to use, then this *spconfig* needs to be set on the affected host (i.e. by running `ldm set-spconfig`) and that Physical Node will subsequently need to be restarted.

Once the Physical Node is back online running the correct *spconfig*, then the final action required is to clear the failure for this Health Check from the Health Monitor page and IO Domain creation and destruction will resume. If you are unsure about how best to resolve this issue please contact Oracle Support.

5. If failures are reported, take corrective action, then clear the failure.

- a. **Perform the actions described in the details screen for each failure.**
 - b. **Return to the Health Monitor main screen.**
In the left navigation panel, click Health Monitor.
 - c. **Select the check box for each failure you want to clear.**
 - d. **Click Clear Failure.**
6. **Consider your next action.**
- Monitor assistant activity – See [“Monitor Past Activity \(Administrators Only\)” on page 164.](#)
 - Monitor deployment activity – See [“Monitor Current Activity” on page 163.](#)
 - Log out – See [“Log Out of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 43.](#)

▼ **Start or Stop a Management Agent**

Management Agents are a new feature available starting with SuperCluster version 2.4.

Management Agent software runs on each control domain and monitors the state of each I/O Domain. The Management Agent provides real-time notification of the state of each domain (Ready for Use, Stopping, Starting, and so on). To be able to start or stop an I/O Domain with the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, you must have the Management Agent enabled for the Physical Host where that I/O Domain resides.

Tip - An I/O Domain might move in or out of the Solaris Open Boot Prompt, and the I/O Domain's state is subsequently not accurately reflected in the I/O Domains page. If this occurs, stop and restart the Management Agent for the physical host where that I/O Domain resides to re-sync the state of all I/O Domains on that host.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41.](#)
2. **In the navigation panel, select Management Agents.**
3. **Determine the physical host where you want to start or stop the Management Agents.**

4. Click Start Agent or Stop Agent.

- Click Start Agent to enable the Management Agent on that physical host. The Agent Status changes to *Online*.
- Click Stop Agent to disable the Management Agent on that physical host. The Agent Status changes to *Offline*.

Management Agents						
Physical Host	Hostname	Management Address	Master Control Domain	Server Status	Agent Status	Actions
M7 PDOM 1	etc2m7-rootadm0101	168.2.1	Yes	Offline	Uninitialised	 Start Agent
M7 PDOM 2	etc2m7-rootadm0201	168.2.4	No	N/A	Uninitialised	 Start Agent

A confirmation page appears, confirming that the Management Agent is being started or stopped.

5. Verify the state of the agent.

In the navigation panel, select the Management Agents to view the status of the Management Agents for each physical host. If the management agent is stopped, its state in the Agent Status column on the Management Agents page is *Offline*.



The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' page with a navigation panel on the left. The main content area is titled 'IO Domain Details' and includes three tabs: 'General Info', 'Resources', and 'Log'. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Domain Interactions' which displays a message: 'Interactions Agent for Control Domain sc1-rootadm0101 is Currently Offline'.

6. Consider your next action.

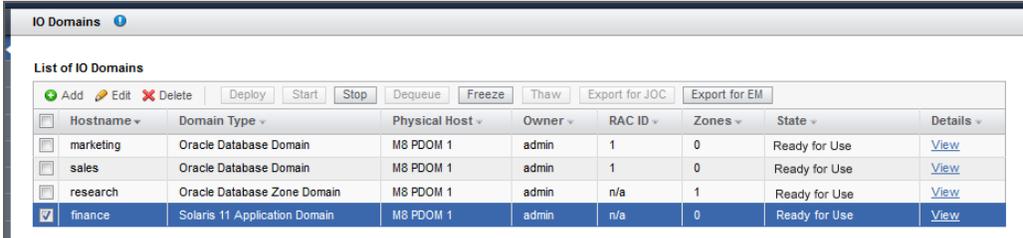
- Start a domain – See [“Start or Stop an I/O Domain” on page 170](#).

▼ Start or Stop an I/O Domain

The state of I/O Domains on a given physical host are monitored by the Management Agent for that physical host. When the Management Agent for a given host is online, it also provides the ability to stop and start an I/O Domain from the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. For instructions on starting a Management Agent, see [“Start or Stop a Management Agent” on page 168](#).

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domains.**
3. **Select the check box next to the domain and click Start or Stop.**
 - Click Start to start that I/O domain.
 - Click Stop to stop that I/O domain.

If the Start or Stop buttons are not enabled (as shown below) you have not started or stopped the Management Agent for that physical host. See [“Start or Stop a Management Agent” on page 168](#).



The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' management interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'Add', 'Edit', 'Delete', 'Deploy', 'Start', 'Stop', 'Dequeue', 'Freeze', 'Thaw', 'Export for JOC', and 'Export for EM'. Below these buttons is a table with the following columns: Hostname, Domain Type, Physical Host, Owner, RAC ID, Zones, State, and Details. The 'finance' domain is selected with a checkmark in the first column. The 'Start' and 'Stop' buttons are disabled (greyed out).

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
<input type="checkbox"/> marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
<input type="checkbox"/> sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Ready for Use	View
<input type="checkbox"/> research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	1	Ready for Use	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View

4. **Click Yes to start or stop the domain.**
The domain state changes to *Ready for Use* or *Stopped*.
5. **Consider your next action.**
 - Start a Management Agent – See [“Start or Stop a Management Agent” on page 168](#).
 - Deploy a domain – See [“Deploy an I/O Domain” on page 133](#).

Using SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST APIs (Deprecated)

The SuperCluster REST API functionality, which provides RESTful APIs for the administration of SuperCluster, was introduced in SuperCluster software version 2.6 (branch 2.6.0.1561), and later deprecated (See Important Note below).

Important Note – The SuperCluster REST API is deprecated and no longer supported in SuperCluster software version 3.0 updated with the 2020.Q1 Quarterly Full Stack (and later). To determine if your SuperCluster is beyond supported versions, determine the *branch number* of the `osc-domcreate` package (see [“Check the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant Version” on page 18](#)). If the branch number is equal to or higher than 3.0.0.1875, the REST API feature is not supported.

These topics describe how to use the SuperCluster REST APIs:

- [“Get an Authentication Token” on page 171](#)
- [“Access the REST API Catalog \(BUI\)” on page 172](#)
- [“REST API Network Identifiers” on page 175](#)
- [“Example: I/O Domain Group JSON File” on page 176](#)
- [“REST API Reference” on page 180](#)

▼ Get an Authentication Token

You can use any HTTPS capable communications interface to obtain a token and interface with the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST API. This can be: cURL, a browser, programming languages such as Python, Java, C, and so forth.

Access the REST API resources over HTTPS. Use your SuperCluster user name and password for authentication.

An authentication token is valid for 30 minutes.

1. **Get an authentication token.**

For example:

```
$ echo $(curl -kX POST --header 'Content-Type: application/json' \
--header 'Accept: application/json' \
-d '{
  "username": "user1",
  "password": "password"
}' \
'https://myhost.us.example.com:13000/api/api-token-auth/')

{"token": "ccccccc99bdc004f51338e6c38e63623333333"}
```

2. **Use the token for requests.**

For example:

```
curl -X GET --header 'Accept: application/json' \
--header 'Authorization: Token ccccccc99bdc004f51338e6c38e63623333333' \
'https://myhost.uk.example.com:13000/api/deploymentgroup/'
```

▼ Access the REST API Catalog (BUI)

You can use the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST APIs to manage I/O Domains on SuperCluster.

This task describes how to access the REST API catalog from a browser. From the browser, you can authorize API keys and users, and perform API calls from the catalog.

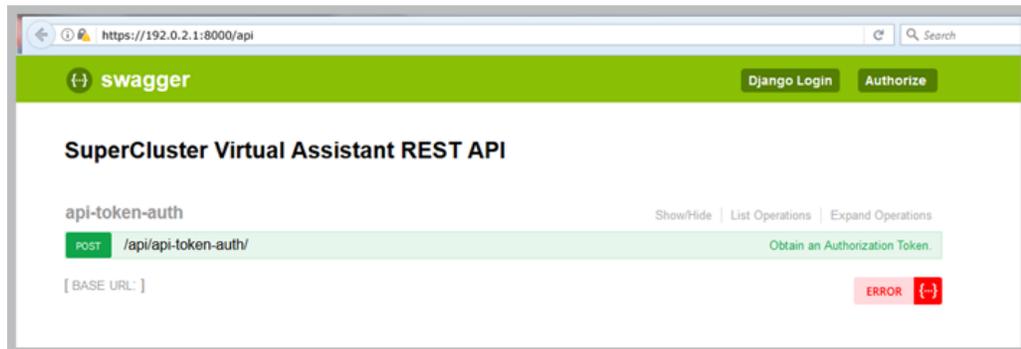
Only the admin account and authorized users can log into the REST API catalog.

Note - The PUT /api/iodomain/(id)/thaw exit code in the catalog might be 200, which is incorrect. The correct exit code is 201.

1. **Open a browser on a system that has network access to SuperCluster.**
2. **Enter this URL in the address field and press Return.**

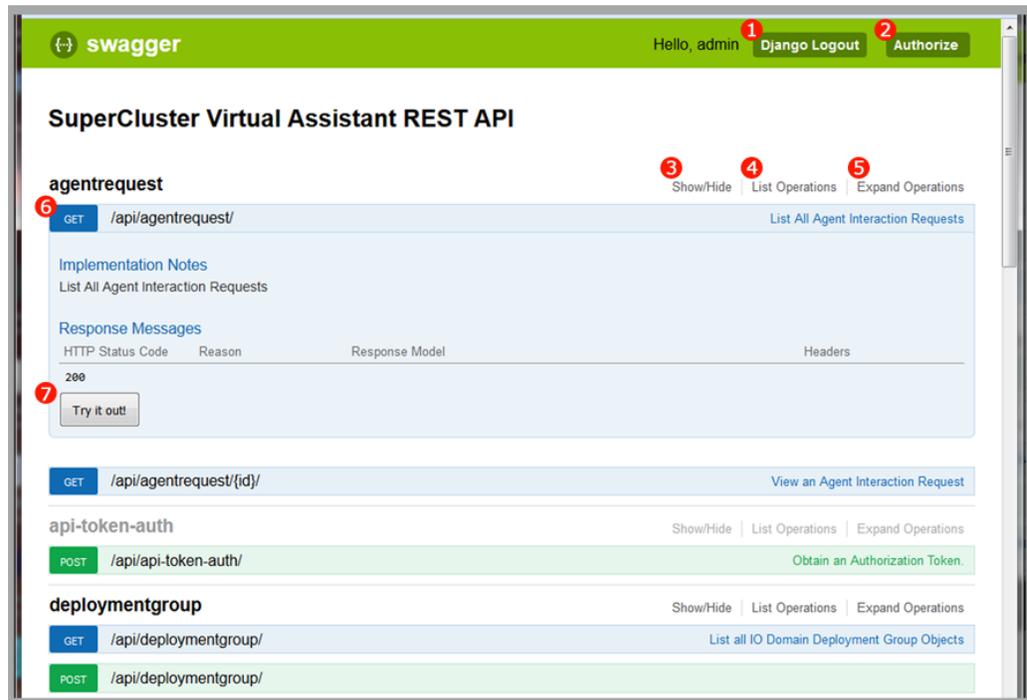
```
https://compute_node_1-Control_dom:8000/api
```

Replace *compute_node_1-Control_dom* with the first compute node's control domain name or IP address.



3. **(Optional) Bookmark the page.**
4. **Click Django Login.**
5. **Enter a valid SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST API user name and password, and click Log in.**
6. **Become familiar with the REST API page.**

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST API page lists all the REST API endpoints that you can use, and provides access to authorize keys and users.



- 1 – REST API page log out button.
- 2 – Authorize button. Opens a dialog box that enables you to authorize these items:
 - API Key – Provide a key (token) that is obtained by issuing POST /api/api-token-auth (see “Get an Authentication Token” on page 171). The authorize and authentication token that can be used in place of a user name and password. Authorization tokens are valid for 30 minutes.
 - REST API users – Provide the user name and password to authorize the user to use the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST API. The user must be a valid user in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.
- 3 – Show or hide the endpoints for a particular category.
- 4 – Show the endpoints for a particular category.

- 5 – Expand the endpoint operations for a particular category. Expanding operations displays applicable notes, parameters, response messages.
- 6 – GET, POST, PUT, and DELETE operations. Click on the endpoint to expand or collapse operation details.
- 7 – Try it out button. Performs the action and displays the Curl command, request URLs and headers, and response bodies, codes, and headers.

7. Consider your next action.

- Learn about the network identifiers for each SuperCluster network– See [“REST API Network Identifiers” on page 175](#).
- Log out of the REST API – Click Django Logout.

REST API Network Identifiers

The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST API does not provide an API that retrieves network identifiers. Use these network identifiers for network creation APIs.

Network	Identifier
Management	1
Client	2
ZFS storage appliance IB	3
Exadata storage server IB	4
Versaboot	5

This example uses a network identifier of 1 to create a new management network.

```
{
  "start_address": "192.0.2.14",
  "end_address": "192.0.2.254",
  "netmask": "255.255.255.0",
  "default_route": "192.0.2.1",
  "network_identifier": 1,
  "applies_to_all": true
}
```

Example: I/O Domain Group JSON File

The following JSON payload demonstrates one possible use of the I/O Domain deployment API. The example creates two Application Domains and two Oracle Database Domains. The Oracle Database Domains use the specified SCAN addresses (optional). Only a minimal number of fields are required to describe an I/O Domain, but optional available fields exist to manually set properties of the I/O Domain which would, if left out, be automatically assigned by the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

This example data can be sent to either of the `/api/iodomain/create/` or `/api/iodomain/create_and_deploy/` interfaces. The former allocates the I/O Domain for later deployment, and the latter deploys the I/O Domain onto the system.

```
{
  "domains": [
    {
      "compute_node": 1,
      "exa_priv_hostname": "mysys-priv1",
      "exa_priv_ipaddr": "203.0.113.61",
      "flavour_token": "db",
      "rac_cluster_id": 10,
      "install_bundle_name": "solaris-minimal-server",
      "mgmt_hostname": "myssc45",
      "mgmt_ipaddr": "198.51.100.187",
      "network_recipe": {
        "domain_name": "us.example.com",
        "gateway": "198.51.100.1",
        "name_servers": "192.0.2.197 192.0.2.198",
        "time_servers": "192.0.2.11 192.0.2.12 192.0.2.13",
        "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
      },
      "primary_hostname": "myssc45.us.example.com",
      "recipe_id": 4,
      "teng_hostname": "myssc45-client",
      "teng_ipaddr": "198.51.100.85",
      "vip_hostname": "myssc45-vip",
      "vip_ipaddr": "198.51.100.86"
    },
    {
      "compute_node": 1,
      "exa_priv_hostname": "myssc45-priv1-app",
      "exa_priv_ipaddr": "203.0.113.61",
      "flavour_token": "11",
      "install_bundle_name": "solaris-minimal-server",
      "mgmt_hostname": "myssc45-app",
```

```

"mgmt_ipaddr": "192.0.2.187",
"network_recipe": {
  "domain_name": "us.example.com",
  "gateway": "192.0.2.1",
  "name_servers": "192.0.2.197 192.0.2.198",
  "time_servers": "192.0.2.11 192.0.2.12 192.0.2.13",
  "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
},
"primary_hostname": "myssc45-app.us.example.com",
"recipe_id": 1,
"teng_hostname": "myssc45-client-app",
"teng_ipaddr": "198.51.100.85",
"vip_hostname": "myssc45-vip",
"vip_ipaddr": "198.51.100.86"
},
{
  "compute_node": 2,
  "exa_priv_hostname": "myssc46-priv1",
  "exa_priv_ipaddr": "203.0.113.62",
  "flavour_token": "db",
"rac_cluster_id": 10,
  "install_bundle_name": "solaris-minimal-server",
  "mgmt_hostname": "myssc46",
  "mgmt_ipaddr": "192.0.2.180",
  "network_recipe": {
    "domain_name": "us.example.com",
    "gateway": "192.0.2.1",
    "name_servers": "192.0.2.197 192.0.2.198",
    "time_servers": "192.0.2.11 192.0.2.12 192.0.2.13",
    "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
  },
  "primary_hostname": "myssc46.us.example.com",
  "recipe_id": 4,
  "teng_hostname": "myssc46-client",
  "teng_ipaddr": "198.51.100.90",
  "vip_hostname": "myssc46-vip",
  "vip_ipaddr": "198.51.100.91"
},
{
  "compute_node": 2,
  "exa_priv_hostname": "myssc46-priv1-app",
  "exa_priv_ipaddr": "201.0.113.62",
  "flavour_token": "11",
  "install_bundle_name": "solaris-minimal-server",
  "mgmt_hostname": "myssc46-app",
  "mgmt_ipaddr": "192.0.2.180",
  "network_recipe": {
    "domain_name": "us.example.com",

```

```

        "gateway": "192.0.2.1",
        "name_servers": "192.0.2.197 192.0.2.198",
        "time_servers": "192.0.2.11 192.0.2.12 192.0.2.13",
        "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
    },
    "primary_hostname": "myssc46-app.us.example.com",
    "recipe_id": 1,
    "teng_hostname": "myssc46-client-app",
    "teng_ipaddr": "198.51.100.90",
    "vip_hostname": "myssc46-vip",
    "vip_ipaddr": "198.51.100.91"
}
],
"scan_address_groups": [
    {
        "scan_addresses": [
            {
                "ip_address": "198.51.100.89"
            },
            {
                "ip_address": "198.51.100.88"
            },
            {
                "ip_address": "198.51.100.87"
            }
        ],
        "scan_hostname": "myssc-io-scan-3",
        "rac_cluster_id": 10
    }
]
}

```

The following screen shows the full set of required and optional arguments.

These fields are equivalent and mutually exclusive:

- flavour_id & flavour_token
- install_bundle_id & install_bundle_name
- network_recipe_id & network_recipe
- recipe_id & recipe

SCCSDomainSerializer():

```

id = IntegerField(read_only=True)
compute_node = IntegerField(required=True)
mgmt_network_id = IntegerField(required=False)
mgmt_hostname = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=67, required=True)
mgmt_ipaddr = IPAddressField(required=False)
teng_network_id = IntegerField(required=False)

```

```

teng_hostname = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=67, required=False)
teng_ipaddr = IPAddressField(required=False)
teng_vlanid = IntegerField(required=False)
stor_ib_network_id = IntegerField(required=False)
stor_ib_hostname = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=67, required=False)
stor_ib_ipaddr = IPAddressField(required=False)
exa_priv_network_id = IntegerField(required=False)
exa_priv_hostname = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=67, required=False)
exa_priv_ipaddr = IPAddressField(required=False)
vip_hostname = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=67, required=False)
vip_ipaddr = IPAddressField(required=False)
primary_hostname = CharField(max_length=32, required=False)
flavour_id = IntegerField(required=False)
flavour_token = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=32, required=False)
install_bundle_id = IntegerField(required=False)
install_bundle_name = CharField(allow_blank=False, max_length=64, required=False)
rac_cluster_id = IntegerField(required=False)
network_recipe_id = IntegerField(required=False)
network_recipe = CustomNetworkRecipeModelSerializer(required=False):
    id = IntegerField(label='ID', read_only=True)
    domain_name = CharField(max_length=128, validators=[<function validate_domain>])
    name_servers = CharField(help_text='List of the IP addresses of the name
resolution servers.

Valid delimiters are commas or spaces', max_length=128,
validators=[<function validate_sever_list>])
    time_servers = CharField(help_text='List of the IP addresses of the time
servers. Valid delimiters are commas or spaces',
max_length=128, validators=[<function validate_sever_list>])
    time_zone = CharField(max_length=128)
    recipe_id = IntegerField(required=False)
    recipe = CustomIODomainRecipeModelSerializer(required=False):
        core_max = IntegerField(help_text='Maximum number of cores assignable.',
label='Maximum Number of Cores', max_value=2147483647,
min_value=-2147483648, validators=[<function validate_positive>])
        memory_max = IntegerField(help_text='Maximum assignable memory in gigabytes',
label='Maximum Memory', max_value=2147483647,
min_value=-2147483648, validators=[<function validate_positive>])
        ib_vf_max = IntegerField(help_text='Maximum number of assignable IB Virtual
Functions', label='Maximum IB VFs', max_value=2147483647,
min_value=-2147483648, validators=[<function validate_positive>])
        xgb_vf_max = IntegerField(help_text='Maximum number of assignable 10GB Virtual
Functions', label='Maximum 10GB VFs', max_value=2147483647,
min_value=-2147483648, validators=[<function validate_positive>])

```

REST API Reference

This section provides examples of SuperCluster Virtual Assistant REST APIs that are available at the time of publication. To see the specific APIs available on your SuperCluster, view the REST API catalog on SuperCluster. See [“Access the REST API Catalog \(BUI\)”](#) on page 172.

- [“Agent Request APIs – /api/agentrequest”](#) on page 180
- [“Deployment Group APIs – /api/deploymentgroup”](#) on page 181
- [“Domain Type APIs – /api/flavour”](#) on page 182
- [“Health Report APIs – /api/health/reports/”](#) on page 186
- [“Install Bundle APIs – /api/install_bundle/”](#) on page 187
- [“I/O Domain APIs – /api/iodomain/”](#) on page 188
- [“I/O Domain Deletion APIs – /api/iodomain/id/”](#) on page 193
- [“IP Address APIs – /api/ip_address/id/”](#) on page 202
- [“Network APIs – /api/network/”](#) on page 203
- [“Network Recipe APIs – /api/network/recipe/”](#) on page 205
- [“Physical Domain APIs – /api/physicaldomain/”](#) on page 207
- [“I/O Domain Recipe APIs – /api/recipe/”](#) on page 214
- [“Resource Allowance APIs – /api/resourceallowance/”](#) on page 217
- [“SCAN Address Group APIs – /api/scan_address_group/”](#) on page 218
- [“System Log APIs – /api/systemlog/”](#) on page 219
- [“User APIs – /api/user/”](#) on page 219

Agent Request APIs – /api/agentrequest

`/api/agentrequest/`

GET: List all pending Agent Requests (Agent requests encapsulate Start/Stop Domain requests.)

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Agent Request Objects

`/api/agentrequest/{id}`

GET: Returns Agent Request matching supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized Agent Request Object

Deployment Group APIs – /api/deploymentgroup

/api/deploymentgroup/

POST Data:

```
{
  "io_domains": []
}
```

io_domains: List of Integer IODomain IDs to be queued for deployment

note: Domains must be in applicable state, as per BUI rules.

RETURNS: Serialized IODomain and Deployment Group Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, POST, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
    "id": 16,
    "io_domains": [
      {
        "id": 17,
        "state": 1,
        "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
        "mgmt_hostname": "test"
      }
    ],
    "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
    "state": 0,
    "created": "2018-05-12T13:18:20.965024Z",
    "owner": 2
  }
]
```

/api/deploymentgroup/

GET: List All Deployment Groups

RETURNS: Multiple Deployment Group Objects

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, POST, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
```

```
"id": 16,
"io_domains": [
  {
    "id": 17,
    "state": 1,
    "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
    "mgmt_hostname": "test"
  }
],
"state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
"state": 0,
"created": "2018-05-12T13:18:20.965024Z",
"owner": 2
},
{
  ...
}
]
```

`/api/deploymentgroup/{id}/`

GET: Returns Deployment Group with supplied ID.

RETURNS: Deployment Group Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
{
  "id": 16,
  "io_domains": [
    {
      "id": 17,
      "state": 1,
      "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
      "mgmt_hostname": "test"
    }
  ],
  "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
  "state": 0,
  "created": "2018-05-12T13:18:20.965024Z",
  "owner": 2
}
```

Domain Type APIs – `/api/flavour`

/api/flavour/
GET: Returns all IO Domain Flavours (Domain Types)
RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Flavour Objects

HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "description": "My Database Domain",
    "disk_size": 150,
    "token": "db",
    "recipes": [
      {
        "id": 4,
        "name": "Small",
        "core_max": 2,
        "memory_max": 32,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,
        "active": true
      },
      {
        "id": 5,
        "name": "Medium",
        "core_max": 4,
        "memory_max": 64,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,
        "active": true
      },
      {
        "id": 6,
        "name": "Large",
        "core_max": 8,
        "memory_max": 128,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,
        "active": true
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

```
    }
  ]
},
{
  "id": 3,
  "description": "Solaris 11 Application Domain",
  "disk_size": 100,
  "token": "11",
  "recipes": [
    {
      "id": 1,
      "name": "Small",
      "core_max": 2,
      "memory_max": 32,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 2,
      "name": "Medium",
      "core_max": 4,
      "memory_max": 64,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 3,
      "name": "Large",
      "core_max": 8,
      "memory_max": 128,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    }
  ]
},
{
  "id": 4,
  "description": "My Database Zone Domain",
  "disk_size": 100,
```

```
    "token": "dbz",
    "recipes": []
  }
]
```

/api/flavour/{id}/

GET: Returns IO Domain Flavour which matches supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized Flavour Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "description": "My Database Domain",
  "disk_size": 150,
  "token": "db",
  "recipes": [
    {
      "id": 4,
      "name": "Small",
      "core_max": 2,
      "memory_max": 32,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 5,
      "name": "Medium",
      "core_max": 4,
      "memory_max": 64,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 6,
      "name": "Large",
      "core_max": 8,
      "memory_max": 128,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
```

```
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,  
        "applies_to_all": true,  
        "owner": 2,  
        "active": true  
    }  
  ]  
}
```

Health Report APIs – /api/health/reports/

/api/health/reports/

GET: Returns all Health Monitor Reports

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Health Monitor Objects (can take a while)

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
[  
  {  
    "id": 1,  
    "records": [  
      {  
        "id": 2,  
        "state_str": "Pass",  
        "state": 0,  
        "date_run": "2018-04-29T14:09:50.390554Z",  
        "result_text": "{\"results\": []}",  
        "resolved": true,  
        "date_resolved": "2018-04-29T14:09:50.390142Z",  
        "sanity_check": 3,  
        "resolved_by": null  
      },  
      {  
        "id": 3,  
        "state_str": "Pass",  
        "state": 0,  
        "date_run": "2018-04-29T14:10:04.898457Z",  
        "result_text": "{\"results\": []}",  
        "resolved": true,  
        "date_resolved": "2018-04-29T14:10:04.897516Z",  
        "sanity_check": 13,  
        "resolved_by": null  
      }  
    ]  
  }  
]
```

```
    }
  ]

/api/health/latest/
GET: Returns the latest Health Monitor Report
RETURNS: Serialized Health Monitor Object

HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

{
  "id": 1,
  "records": [
    {
      "id": 2,
      "state_str": "Pass",
      "state": 0,
      "date_run": "2018-04-29T14:09:50.390554Z",
      "result_text": "{\"results\": []}",
      "resolved": true,
      "date_resolved": "2018-04-29T14:09:50.390142Z",
      "sanity_check": 3,
      "resolved_by": null
    },
    {
      "id": 3,
      "state_str": "Pass",
      "state": 0,
      "date_run": "2018-04-29T14:10:04.898457Z",
      "result_text": "{\"results\": []}",
      "resolved": true,
      "date_resolved": "2018-04-29T14:10:04.897516Z",
      "sanity_check": 13,
      "resolved_by": null
    }
  ]
}
```

Install Bundle APIs – /api/install_bundle/

```
/api/install_bundle/
GET: Return All Install Bundles (Solaris Large Server/Solaris Minimal Server)
RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Install Bundle Objects
```

```
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept
```

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "description": "Solaris Minimal Server",
  "identifier": "solaris-minimal-server",
  "active": true
}
```

```
/api/install_bundle/{id}/
GET: Return the Bundle which matches supplied ID
RETURNS: Serialized Install Bundle Object
```

```
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept
```

```
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "description": "Solaris Minimal Server",
    "identifier": "solaris-minimal-server",
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "description": "Solaris Large Server",
    "identifier": "solaris-large-server",
    "active": true
  }
]
```

I/O Domain APIs – /api/iomain/

```
/api/iomain/
GET: Return all IODomains which the user has permission to see
RETURNS: Multiple Serialized IO Domain Objects
```

```
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
```

```
Vary: Accept
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "mgmt_ips": [],
    "ten_g_ips": [],
    "zfs_ib_ips": [],
    "exa_ib_ips": [],
    "vip_ips": [],
    "resource_allocation": {
      "id": 1,
      "cores": [],
      "memory": [],
      "virtual_functions": [],
      "iodrae_token": "-3406869841"
    },
    "flavour": {
      "id": 1,
      "description": "My Database Domain",
      "disk_size": 150,
      "token": "db",
      "recipes": [
        {
          "id": 4,
          "name": "Small",
          "core_max": 2,
          "memory_max": 32,
          "ib_vf_max": 1,
          "xgb_vf_max": 2,
          "applies_to_all": true,
          "owner": 2,
          "active": true
        },
        {
          "id": 5,
          "name": "Medium",
          "core_max": 4,
          "memory_max": 64,
          "ib_vf_max": 1,
          "xgb_vf_max": 2,
          "applies_to_all": true,
          "owner": 2,
          "active": true
        },
        {
          "id": 6,
          "name": "Large",
          "core_max": 8,
```

```
"memory_max": 128,
"ib_vf_max": 1,
"xgb_vf_max": 2,
"applies_to_all": true,
"owner": 2,
"active": true
}
]
},
"state_str": "Destroyed Domain",
"recipe": {
"id": 4,
"name": "Small",
"core_max": 2,
"memory_max": 32,
"ib_vf_max": 1,
"xgb_vf_max": 2,
"applies_to_all": true,
"owner": 2,
"active": true
},
"root_domains": [
{
"mgmt_hostname": "mysys"
}
],
"iodomainlog_set": [
{
"id": 1,
"level": "info",
"message": "Creation of IO Domain Started.",
"created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.708954Z",
"io_domain": 1
},
{
"id": 2,
"level": "info",
"message": "Resources Allocated. Domain is ready for deployment.",
"created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.709522Z",
"io_domain": 1
},
{
"id": 3,
"level": "info",
"message": "IO Domain Released",
"created": "2018-04-29T16:02:46.719994Z",
"io_domain": 1
}
]
```

```

    ],
    "rac_cluster_id": -1,
    "state": -7,
    "root_domain_num": 1,
    "owner": 2
  },
  ...
  ...
]

```

/api/iomain/by_hostname/{hostname}/

GET: Return the IO Domain whose Management Hostname matches the supplied Hostname
 RETURNS: Serialized IO Domain Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```

{
  "id": 1,
  "mgmt_ips": [],
  "ten_g_ips": [],
  "zfs_ib_ips": [],
  "exa_ib_ips": [],
  "vip_ips": [],
  "resource_allocation": {
    "id": 1,
    "cores": [],
    "memory": [],
    "virtual_functions": [],
    "iodrae_token": "-3406869841"
  },
  "flavour": {
    "id": 1,
    "description": "My Database Domain",
    "disk_size": 150,
    "token": "db",
    "recipes": [
      {
        "id": 4,
        "name": "Small",
        "core_max": 2,
        "memory_max": 32,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,

```

```
"active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 5,
    "name": "Medium",
    "core_max": 4,
    "memory_max": 64,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "name": "Large",
    "core_max": 8,
    "memory_max": 128,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  }
]
},
"state_str": "Destroyed Domain",
"recipe": {
  "id": 4,
  "name": "Small",
  "core_max": 2,
  "memory_max": 32,
  "ib_vf_max": 1,
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "owner": 2,
  "active": true
},
"root_domains": [
{
  "mgmt_hostname": "mysysmgt"
}
],
"iodomainlog_set": [
{
  "id": 1,
  "level": "info",
  "message": "Creation of IO Domain Started.",
```

```

    "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.708954Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "Resources Allocated. Domain is ready for deployment.",
    "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.709522Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "IO Domain Released",
    "created": "2018-04-29T16:02:46.719994Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  }
],
"rac_cluster_id": -1,
"state": -7,
"root_domain_num": 1,
"owner": 2
}

```

I/O Domain Deletion APIs – `/api/iomain/id/`

`/api/iomain/{id}/`

DELETE: Queue the IODomain with supplied ID for destruction.

RETURNS: Serialized Deletion Queue Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```

{
  "id": 1,
  "mgmt_ips": [],
  "ten_g_ips": [],
  "zfs_ib_ips": [],
  "exa_ib_ips": [],
  "vip_ips": [],
  "resource_allocation": {
    "id": 1,

```

```
"cores": [],
"memory": [],
"virtual_functions": [],
"iodrae_token": "-3406869841"
},
"flavour": {
  "id": 1,
  "description": "My Database Domain",
  "disk_size": 150,
  "token": "db",
  "recipes": [
    {
      "id": 4,
      "name": "Small",
      "core_max": 2,
      "memory_max": 32,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 5,
      "name": "Medium",
      "core_max": 4,
      "memory_max": 64,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    },
    {
      "id": 6,
      "name": "Large",
      "core_max": 8,
      "memory_max": 128,
      "ib_vf_max": 1,
      "xgb_vf_max": 2,
      "applies_to_all": true,
      "owner": 2,
      "active": true
    }
  ]
},
"state_str": "Destroyed Domain",
"recipe": {
```

```

    "id": 4,
    "name": "Small",
    "core_max": 2,
    "memory_max": 32,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  "root_domains": [
  {
    "mgmt_hostname": "mysysmgt"
  }
  ],
  "iodomainlog_set": [
  {
    "id": 1,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "Creation of IO Domain Started.",
    "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.708954Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "Resources Allocated. Domain is ready for deployment.",
    "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.709522Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "IO Domain Released",
    "created": "2018-04-29T16:02:46.719994Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  }
  ],
  "rac_cluster_id": -1,
  "state": -7,
  "root_domain_num": 1,
  "owner": 2
}

```

/api/iodomain/{id}

GET: Return the IODomain which matches supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized IODomain Object

```
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

{
  "id": 1,
  "mgmt_ips": [],
  "ten_g_ips": [],
  "zfs_ib_ips": [],
  "exa_ib_ips": [],
  "vip_ips": [],
  "resource_allocation": {
    "id": 1,
    "cores": [],
    "memory": [],
    "virtual_functions": [],
    "iodrae_token": "-3406869841"
  },
  "flavour": {
    "id": 1,
    "description": "My Database Domain",
    "disk_size": 150,
    "token": "db",
    "recipes": [
      {
        "id": 4,
        "name": "Small",
        "core_max": 2,
        "memory_max": 32,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,
        "active": true
      },
      {
        "id": 5,
        "name": "Medium",
        "core_max": 4,
        "memory_max": 64,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2,
        "applies_to_all": true,
        "owner": 2,
        "active": true
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```
{
  "id": 6,
  "name": "Large",
  "core_max": 8,
  "memory_max": 128,
  "ib_vf_max": 1,
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "owner": 2,
  "active": true
}
],
  "state_str": "Destroyed Domain",
  "recipe": {
    "id": 4,
    "name": "Small",
    "core_max": 2,
    "memory_max": 32,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  "root_domains": [
    {
      "mgmt_hostname": "mysysmgt"
    }
  ],
  "iodomainlog_set": [
    {
      "id": 1,
      "level": "info",
      "message": "Creation of IO Domain Started.",
      "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.708954Z",
      "io_domain": 1
    },
    {
      "id": 2,
      "level": "info",
      "message": "Resources Allocated. Domain is ready for deployment.",
      "created": "2018-04-29T15:44:52.709522Z",
      "io_domain": 1
    },
    {
      "id": 3,
      "level": "info",
```

```
    "message": "IO Domain Released",
    "created": "2018-04-29T16:02:46.719994Z",
    "io_domain": 1
  }
],
"rac_cluster_id": -1,
"state": -7,
"root_domain_num": 1,
"owner": 2
}
```

/api/iodomain/{id}/action/{action}/

GET: Start/Stop an Iodomain which matches the supplied ID

Args: action = 'start' or 'stop'

RETURNS: Serialized AgentRequest object

/api/iodomain/{id}/freeze/

POST: Freeze IODomain which matches the supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized IODomain Freeze Queue Entry/Deployment Group

/api/iodomain/{id}/thaw/

PUT: Thaw IODomain which matches the supplied ID

INPUT: physical_domain: <id> #PDOM On which to thaw

RETURNS: Serialized IODomain Thaw Queue Entry

/api/iodomain/create/

POST: Allocate one or many IODomains and their ScanAddressGroups

INPUT: Expanded in Auxilliary file

EXAMPLE INPUT:

```
{
  "domains": [
    {
      "compute_node": 1,
      "flavour_token": "db",
      "rac_cluster_id": 10,
      "mgmt_hostname": "mysysmgmt",
      "network_recipe_id": 1,
      "recipe_id": 4
    }
  ]
}
```

RETURNS: Complex Serializer containing IODomains and Scan Address Group Objects

HTTP 201 Created

Allow: POST, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
{
  "domains": [
    {
      "id": 1,
      "compute_node": 1,
      "mgmt_network_id": 6,
      "mgmt_hostname": "mysysgmt",
      "mgmt_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",
      "teng_network_id": 7,
      "teng_hostname": "mysys-client",
      "teng_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.4",
      "stor_ib_network_id": 8,
      "stor_ib_hostname": "mysys-storib",
      "stor_ib_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnnnnn.nnn.nnn.9",
      "exa_priv_network_id": 9,
      "exa_priv_hostname": "mysys-priv1",
      "exa_priv_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.7",
      "vip_hostname": "mysys-vip",
      "vip_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.5",
      "primary_hostname": "mysys",
      "flavour_id": 1,
      "flavour_token": "db",
      "install_bundle_id": 2,
      "install_bundle_name": "solaris-large-server",
      "rac_cluster_id": 10,
      "network_recipe": {
        "domain_name": "us.example.com",
        "name_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.197 nnn.nnn.nnn.198",
        "time_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1 nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.1",
        "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
      },
      "recipe": {
        "core_max": 2,
        "memory_max": 32,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2
      }
    }
  ],
  "scan_address_groups": [
    {
      "id": 1,
      "scan_addresses": [
        {
          "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.6"
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
}
```

```
{
  "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.7"
},
{
  "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.8"
}
],
"scan_hostname": "io-scan-1",
"rac_cluster_id": 10
}
],
"deployment_group": null
}
```

/api/iodomain/create_and_deploy/

POST: Create one or many IODomains and their ScanAddressGroups and return their Deployment Queue Objects

INPUT: Expanded in attached file

EXAMPLE INPUT:

```
{
  "domains": [
    {
      "compute_node": 1,
      "exa_priv_hostname": "mysys-priv1",
      "flavour_token": "db",
      "rac_cluster_id": 10,
      "install_bundle_name": "solaris-minimal-server",
      "mgmt_hostname": "mysysmgmt",
      "network_recipe": {
        "domain_name": "us.example.com",
        "gateway": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1",
        "name_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.197 nnn.nnn.nnn.198",
        "time_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1 nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.1",
        "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
      },
      "primary_hostname": "mysys.us.example.com",
      "recipe_id": 4,
      "teng_hostname": "mysys-client",
      "vip_hostname": "mysys-vip"
    }
  ]
}
```

RETURNS: Complex Serializer containing IODomains and Scan Address Group Objects and created IODomain Deployment Group objects

HTTP 201 Created

Allow: POST, OPTIONS
 Content-Type: application/json
 Vary: Accept

```
{
  "domains": [
    {
      "id": 2,
      "compute_node": 1,
      "mgmt_network_id": 6,
      "mgmt_hostname": "mysys46",
      "mgmt_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.36",
      "teng_network_id": 7,
      "teng_hostname": "mysys-client",
      "teng_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.9",
      "stor_ib_network_id": 8,
      "stor_ib_hostname": "mysys-storib",
      "stor_ib_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.10",
      "exa_priv_network_id": 9,
      "exa_priv_hostname": "mysys-priv1",
      "exa_priv_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.8",
      "vip_hostname": "mysys-vip",
      "vip_ipaddr": "nnn.nnn.nnn.10",
      "primary_hostname": "mysys",
      "flavour_id": 1,
      "flavour_token": "db",
      "install_bundle_id": 2,
      "install_bundle_name": "solaris-large-server",
      "rac_cluster_id": 10,
      "network_recipe": {
        "domain_name": "us.example.com",
        "name_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.198",
        "time_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1 nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.1",
        "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles"
      },
      "recipe": {
        "core_max": 2,
        "memory_max": 32,
        "ib_vf_max": 1,
        "xgb_vf_max": 2
      }
    }
  ],
  "scan_address_groups": [
    {
      "id": 1,
      "scan_addresses": [

```

```
        "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.6"
    },
    {
        "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.7"
    },
    {
        "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.8"
    }
],
"scan_hostname": "io-scan-1",
"rac_cluster_id": 10
}
],
"deployment_group": {
"id": 1,
"io_domains": [
    {
        "id": 2,
        "state": 1,
        "state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
        "mgmt_hostname": "mysys46"
    }
],
"state_str": "Queued for Deployment",
"state": 0,
"created": "2018-05-12T13:31:13.217440Z",
"owner": 2
}
}
```

IP Address APIs – `/api/ip_address/id/`

`/api/ip_address/{id}/`

GET: Return IP Address object whose ID matches supplied ID

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized IPAddress Objects

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.26",
  "hostname": "mysys-sp0",
  "allocated": true,
  "allocated_at_setup": true,
  "is_scan": false,
  "is_gateway": false,
  "order_weight": 1,
```

```
"network": 1,  
"tag": null  
}
```

Network APIs – /api/network/

/api/network/

GET: Returns All Networks

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Network Objects

```
[  
  {  
    "id": 6,  
    "start_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",  
    "end_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.64",  
    "netmask": "255.255.255.0",  
    "default_route": "nnn.nnn.nnn.254",  
    "network_identifier": {  
      "id": 1,  
      "display_name": "Management Network",  
      "internal_name": "management",  
      "description": "The Management (1Gb) Network",  
      "routable": true  
    },  
    "applies_to_all": true,  
    "accessible_users": [],  
    "accessible_groups": [  
      6  
    ],  
    "ipaddress_set": [  
      {  
        "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",  
        "hostname": null,  
        "is_scan": false,  
        "allocated": false  
      },  
      ...  
    ]  
  }  
]
```

/api/network/

POST Data:

```
{  
  "start_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1",  
  "end_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.120", #optional  
  "netmask": "255.255.255.0",  
}
```

```
    "default_route": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1", #optional for non-routable nets
    "network_identifier": 1,
    "applies_to_all": false,
    "accessible_users": [],
    "accessible_groups": []
}
```

network_identifier: Id of a Network Identifier
- Note NetworkIdentifier Retrieval REST Interface not yet available. Use manual mapping

accessible_users: List of User ID's
accessible_groups: Ignored currently

RETURNS: Serialized Network Object

```
{
  "id": 6,
  "start_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",
  "end_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.64",
  "netmask": "255.255.255.0",
  "default_route": "nnn.nnn.nnn.254",
  "network_identifier": {
    "id": 1,
    "display_name": "Management Network",
    "internal_name": "management",
    "description": "The Management (1Gb) Network",
    "routable": true
  },
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "accessible_users": [],
  "accessible_groups": [
    6
  ],
  "ipaddress_set": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",
      "hostname": null,
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": false
    },
    ...
  ]
}
```

/api/network/{id}/

GET: Returns a serialized network instance which matches supplied ID

Not Found: Should return 404

```

RETURNS: Serialized Network Object
{
  "id": 6,
  "start_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",
  "end_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.64",
  "netmask": "255.255.255.0",
  "default_route": "nnn.nnn.nnn.254",
  "network_identifier": {
    "id": 1,
    "display_name": "Management Network",
    "internal_name": "management",
    "description": "The Management (1Gb) Network",
    "routable": true
  },
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "accessible_users": [],
  "accessible_groups": [
    6
  ],
  "ipaddress_set": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.35",
      "hostname": null,
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": false
    },
    ...
  ]
}

```

Network Recipe APIs – /api/network/recipe/

/api/network/recipe/

GET: Return all Network Recipe Objects

RETURNS: Serialized Network Recipe Object

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, POST, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```

[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "name": "default",
    "domain_name": "us.example.com",
    "name_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.197 nnn.nnn.nnn.198 nnn.nnn.nnn.132",

```

```
    "time_servers": "nnn.nnn.nnn.1",
    "time_zone": "America/Los_Angeles",
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "active": true,
    "owner": 2
  },
  ...
  ...
]
```

/api/network/recipe/

POST: Create a new Network Recipe

POST Data:

```
{
  "name": "",
  "domain_name": "",
  "name_servers": "",
  "time_servers": "",
  "time_zone": "",
  "applies_to_all": false, # default
  "active": false,
  "users": []
}
```

users: list of user id's who may access this network

RETURNS: Serialized New Network Recipe Object

/api/network/recipe/{id}/

DELETE: Delete a Network Recipe with supplied ID

/api/network/recipe/{id}/

GET: Get a Network Recipe with supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized Network Recipe Object

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "name": "Small",
  "core_max": 2,
  "memory_max": 32,
  "ib_vf_max": 1,
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "owner": 2,
  "active": true
}
```

/api/network/recipe/{id}/

PUT: Modify a network recipe with the supplied ID

POST Data:

```

{
  "id": "",
  "name": "",
  "domain_name": "",
  "name_servers": "",
  "time_servers": "",
  "time_zone": "",
  "applies_to_all": false, # default
  "active": false,
  "users": []
}
users: list of user id's who may access this network
RETURNS: Serialized Modified Network Recipe
{
  "id": 1,
  "name": "Small",
  "core_max": 2,
  "memory_max": 32,
  "ib_vf_max": 1,
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "owner": 2,
  "active": true
}

```

Physical Domain APIs – /api/physicaldomain/

```

/api/physicaldomain/
GET: Return all PhysicalDomain (PDOM) Objects
RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Physical Domain Objects
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "internal_name": "ssccn1",
    "guests": [
      {
        "id": 1,
        "internal_name": "primary",
        "host_os": "s11",
        "host_type": "root",
        "physical_type": "guest",
        "virtual_type": "ldom",
        "state": 400,
        "primary_interface": "mgmt",
        "is_control_domain": true,

```

```
"is_master_control_domain": true,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": null,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": true,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 1,
"mgmt_interfaces": [
  6
],
"client_interfaces": [
  8
],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  7
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [],
"vip_interfaces": [],
"versaboot_interfaces": [
  9,
  10
],
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [
  1,
  2,
  3,
  4,
  5,
  6
],
"variables": [],
"accessible_groups": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": [
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "internal_name": "ssccn1-dom1",
    "host_os": "s11",
    "host_type": "root",
    "physical_type": "guest",
    "virtual_type": "ldom",
```

```
"state": 400,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": true,
"rac_id": null,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": true,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 2,
"mgmt_interfaces": [
  11
],
"client_interfaces": [],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  12
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [],
"vip_interfaces": [],
"versaboot_interfaces": [
  13,
  14
],
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [
  8,
  9,
  10,
  7
],
"variables": [],
"accessible_groups": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": []
}
},
{
  "id": 2,
  "internal_name": "ssccn3",
  "guests": [
    {
      "id": 3,
```

```
"internal_name": "primary",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "root",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "ldom",
"state": 400,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": true,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": null,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": true,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 3,
"mgmt_interfaces": [
  19
],
"client_interfaces": [],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  20
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [],
"vip_interfaces": [],
"versaboot_interfaces": [
  21,
  22
],
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [
  1,
  2,
  3,
  4,
  5,
  6
],
"variables": [],
"accessible_groups": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": []
},
{
```

```
"id": 4,
"internal_name": "ssccn3-dom1",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "root",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "ldom",
"state": 400,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": true,
"rac_id": null,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": true,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 4,
"mgmt_interfaces": [
  23
],
"client_interfaces": [],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  24
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [],
"vip_interfaces": [],
"versaboot_interfaces": [
  25,
  26
],
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [
  8,
  9,
  10,
  7
],
"variables": [],
"accessible_groups": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": []
}
],
},
```

```
{
  "id": 3,
  "internal_name": "ssccn4",
  "guests": [
    {
      "id": 5,
      "internal_name": "primary",
      "host_os": "s11",
      "host_type": "root",
      "physical_type": "guest",
      "virtual_type": "ldom",
      "state": 400,
      "primary_interface": "mgmt",
      "is_control_domain": true,
      "is_master_control_domain": false,
      "is_service_domain": false,
      "rac_id": null,
      "active": true,
      "sanity_target": true,
      "physical_position_index": null,
      "timing": null,
      "net_config": 5,
      "mgmt_interfaces": [
        28
      ],
      "client_interfaces": [],
      "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
        29
      ],
      "exa_ib_interfaces": [],
      "vip_interfaces": [],
      "versaboot_interfaces": [
        30,
        31
      ],
      "ilom_interfaces": [],
      "memory": [],
      "cores": [],
      "physical_functions": [],
      "root_complexes": [
        11,
        12,
        13,
        14,
        15,
        16
      ],
      "variables": [],
    }
  ]
}
```

```
"accessible_groups": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": []
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "internal_name": "ssccn4-dom1",
    "host_os": "s11",
    "host_type": "root",
    "physical_type": "guest",
    "virtual_type": "ldom",
    "state": 400,
    "primary_interface": "mgmt",
    "is_control_domain": false,
    "is_master_control_domain": false,
    "is_service_domain": true,
    "rac_id": null,
    "active": true,
    "sanity_target": true,
    "physical_position_index": null,
    "timing": null,
    "net_config": 6,
    "mgmt_interfaces": [
      32
    ],
    "client_interfaces": [],
    "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
      33
    ],
    "exa_ib_interfaces": [],
    "vip_interfaces": [],
    "versaboot_interfaces": [
      34,
      35
    ],
    "ilom_interfaces": [],
    "memory": [],
    "cores": [],
    "physical_functions": [],
    "root_complexes": [
      17,
      18,
      19,
      20
    ],
    "variables": [],
    "accessible_groups": [],
```

```
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [],
"vms": []
  }
]
}
```

I/O Domain Recipe APIs – /api/recipe/

/api/recipe/

GET: Return All IODomain Recipe Objects

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Recipe Objects

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, POST, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "name": "Small",
    "core_max": 2,
    "memory_max": 32,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "name": "Medium",
    "core_max": 4,
    "memory_max": 64,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "name": "Large",
```

```
"core_max": 8,
"memory_max": 128,
"ib_vf_max": 1,
"xgb_vf_max": 2,
"applies_to_all": true,
"owner": 2,
"active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 4,
    "name": "Small",
    "core_max": 2,
    "memory_max": 32,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 5,
    "name": "Medium",
    "core_max": 4,
    "memory_max": 64,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "name": "Large",
    "core_max": 8,
    "memory_max": 128,
    "ib_vf_max": 1,
    "xgb_vf_max": 2,
    "applies_to_all": true,
    "owner": 2,
    "active": true
  }
]
/api/recipe/
POST: Create a new recipe
DATA: {
  "name": "",
  "core_max": null,
  "memory_max": null,
```

```
    "ib_vf_max": null,  
    "xgb_vf_max": null,  
    "applies_to_all": false,  
    "owner": null,  
    "active": false  
  }  
  owner: ID of user who will own this recipe. Defaults to current user.  
  RETURNS: Serialized Recipe Object
```

HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

```
{  
  "id": 1,  
  "name": "Small",  
  "core_max": 2,  
  "memory_max": 32,  
  "ib_vf_max": 1,  
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,  
  "applies_to_all": true,  
  "owner": 2,  
  "active": true  
}
```

/api/recipe/{id}/
DELETE: Deletes the Recipe whose ID matches supplied ID

/api/recipe/{id}/
GET: Get the Recipe whose ID matches Supplied ID
RETURNS: Serialized Recipe Object
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

```
{  
  "id": 1,  
  "name": "Small",  
  "core_max": 2,  
  "memory_max": 32,  
  "ib_vf_max": 1,  
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,  
  "applies_to_all": true,  
  "owner": 2,  
  "active": true  
}
```

```
/api/recipe/{id}/
PUT: Update the Recipe whose ID matches Supplied ID
DATA: {
  "id": "",
  "name": "",
  "core_max": null,
  "memory_max": null,
  "ib_vf_max": null,
  "xgb_vf_max": null,
  "applies_to_all": false,
  "owner": null,
  "active": false
}
RETURNS: Serialized Recipe Object
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept
```

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "name": "Small",
  "core_max": 2,
  "memory_max": 32,
  "ib_vf_max": 1,
  "xgb_vf_max": 2,
  "applies_to_all": true,
  "owner": 2,
  "active": true
}
```

Resource Allowance APIs –/api/resourceallowance/

```
/api/resourceallowance/
GET: List all User Resource Allowances
HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept
```

```
{
  "id": "",
  "num_ib_vfs": null,
```

```
    "num_xgb_vfs": null,  
    "num_fc_vfs": null,  
    "num_cores": null,  
    "mem_in_gb": null,  
    "user": null  
  }
```

`/api/resourceallowance/`
POST: Create a User Resource Allowance

```
DATA: {  
  "num_ib_vfs": null,  
  "num_xgb_vfs": null,  
  "num_fc_vfs": null,  
  "num_cores": null,  
  "mem_in_gb": null,  
  "user": null  
}
```

user: id of the user to whom this allowance corresponds
RETURNS: Serialized Resource Allowance Object

HTTP 200 OK
Allow: GET, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS
Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

```
{  
  "id": "",  
  "num_ib_vfs": null,  
  "num_xgb_vfs": null,  
  "num_fc_vfs": null,  
  "num_cores": null,  
  "mem_in_gb": null,  
  "user": null  
}
```

SCAN Address Group APIs – `/api/ scan_address_group/`

`/api/scan_address_group/`
GET: List All Scan Address Groups
RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Scan Address Group Objects

`/api/scan_address/group/{id}`
GET: Return ScanAddressGroup whose ID matches the supplied ID

RETURNS: Serialized Scan Address Group Objects

System Log APIs – /api/systemlog/

/api/systemlog/

GET: Return All SystemLog Entries (can take a while)

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized System Log Objects

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json

Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
    "id": 50,
    "level": "success",
    "message": "The user admin logged in successfully from nnn.nnn.nnn.99",
    "created": "2018-05-12T10:51:30.514744Z"
  },
  {
    "id": 49,
    "level": "success",
    "message": "System Configuration Import Complete.",
    "created": "2018-05-12T10:48:56.996620Z"
  },
  {
    "id": 48,
    "level": "info",
    "message": "Resource Discovery Complete.",
    "created": "2018-05-12T10:48:56.970266Z"
  }
  ...
]
```

User APIs – /api/user/

/api/user/

GET: Return all Users

RETURNS: Multiple Serialized Resource Allowance Objects

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET, HEAD, OPTIONS

Content-Type: application/json
Vary: Accept

```
[
  {
    "id": 2,
    "groups": [
      {
        "id": 1,
        "name": "network_1_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 2,
        "name": "network_2_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 3,
        "name": "network_3_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 4,
        "name": "network_4_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 5,
        "name": "network_5_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 6,
        "name": "network_6_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 7,
        "name": "network_7_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 8,
        "name": "network_8_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 9,
        "name": "network_9_owners"
      },
      {
        "id": 10,
        "name": "network_10_owners"
      }
    ]
  },
]
```

```

    "username": "admin",
    "first_name": "Administrator",
    "last_name": "",
    "email": "example@example.com",
    "is_staff": true,
    "is_active": true,
    "user_permissions": []
  }
]

```

`/api/user/{id}/resourceallowance/`

GET: Return the User Allowance for the User whose ID matches the supplied ID
 RETURNS: Serialized Resource Allowance Object

`/api/user/{id}/resourceallowance/`

PUT: Update the Resource Allowance for the User whose ID matches the supplied ID

```

DATA: {
  "num_ib_vfs": null,
  "num_xgb_vfs": null,
  "num_fc_vfs": null,
  "num_cores": null,
  "mem_in_gb": null
}

```

RETURNS: Serialized Resource Allowance Object

Zone List API – `/api/zone`

`/api/zone/`

HTTP 200 OK

Allow: GET

Content-Type: application/json\

```

[
  {
    "id": 2,
    "mgmt_interfaces": [
      {
        "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.31",
        "hostname": "z1",
        "is_scan": false,
        "allocated": true
      }
    ],
    "client_interfaces": [
      {

```

```
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.215",
    "hostname": "z1-client1",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  },
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.216",
    "hostname": "z1-client2",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.10",
    "hostname": "z1-storib",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.13",
    "hostname": "z1-priv1",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"vip_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.217",
    "hostname": "z1-vip",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"versaboot_interfaces": [],
"state_str": "Configured",
"accessible_groups": [
  {
    "id": 27,
    "name": "vm_2_owners"
  }
],
"internal_name": "zone",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "zone",
"physical_type": "guest",
```

```
"virtual_type": "zone",
"state": 350,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": 10,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": false,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 7,
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [],
"variables": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [
  22
]
},
{
  "id": 4,
  "mgmt_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.32",
      "hostname": "z2",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "client_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.225",
      "hostname": "z2-client",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.11",
      "hostname": "z2-storib",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ]
}
```

```
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.15",
    "hostname": "z2-priv1",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"vip_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.226",
    "hostname": "z2-vip",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"versaboot_interfaces": [],
"state_str": "Configured",
"accessible_groups": [
  {
    "id": 29,
    "name": "vm_4_owners"
  }
],
"internal_name": "zone",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "zone",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "zone",
"state": 350,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": 10,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": false,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 9,
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [],
"variables": [],
"accessible_users": [],
```

```
"io_domains": [
  31
],
},
{
  "id": 5,
  "mgmt_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.34",
      "hostname": "z3",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "client_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.227",
      "hostname": "z3-client1",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    },
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.230",
      "hostname": "z3-client2",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.13",
      "hostname": "z3-storib",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "exa_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.17",
      "hostname": "z3-priv1",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "vip_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.231",
      "hostname": "z3-vip",
```

```
        "is_scan": false,
        "allocated": true
    }
],
"versaboot_interfaces": [],
"state_str": "Configured",
"accessible_groups": [
    {
        "id": 30,
        "name": "vm_5_owners"
    }
],
"internal_name": "zone",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "zone",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "zone",
"state": 350,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": 5,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": false,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 10,
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [],
"variables": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [
    22
]
}],
{
    "id": 6,
    "mgmt_interfaces": [
        {
            "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.36",
            "hostname": "z4",
            "is_scan": false,
            "allocated": true
        }
    ]
}
```

```
],
"client_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.235",
    "hostname": "z4-client",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"zfs_ib_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.15",
    "hostname": "z4-storib",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"exa_ib_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.18",
    "hostname": "z4-priv1",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"vip_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.236",
    "hostname": "z4-vip",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"versaboot_interfaces": [],
"state_str": "Configured",
"accessible_groups": [
  {
    "id": 31,
    "name": "vm_6_owners"
  }
],
"internal_name": "zone",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "zone",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "zone",
"state": 350,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
```

```
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": 5,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": false,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 11,
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [],
"variables": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [
  31
]
},
{
  "id": 7,
  "mgmt_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.42",
      "hostname": "z22",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "client_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.241",
      "hostname": "z22-client",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.22",
      "hostname": "z22-storib",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "exa_ib_interfaces": [
    {
```

```
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.19",
    "hostname": "z22-priv1",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"vip_interfaces": [
  {
    "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.242",
    "hostname": "z22-vip",
    "is_scan": false,
    "allocated": true
  }
],
"versaboot_interfaces": [],
"state_str": "Configured",
"accessible_groups": [
  {
    "id": 33,
    "name": "vm_7_owners"
  }
],
"internal_name": "zone",
"host_os": "s11",
"host_type": "zone",
"physical_type": "guest",
"virtual_type": "zone",
"state": 350,
"primary_interface": "mgmt",
"is_control_domain": false,
"is_master_control_domain": false,
"is_service_domain": false,
"rac_id": 1,
"active": true,
"sanity_target": false,
"physical_position_index": null,
"timing": null,
"net_config": 12,
"ilom_interfaces": [],
"memory": [],
"cores": [],
"physical_functions": [],
"root_complexes": [],
"variables": [],
"accessible_users": [],
"io_domains": [
  31
]
```

```
},
{
  "id": 8,
  "mgmt_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.46",
      "hostname": "z33-dbz",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "client_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnnnnn.nnn.nnn.248",
      "hostname": "z33-dbz-client",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "zfs_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.25",
      "hostname": "z33-dbz-storib",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "exa_ib_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.21",
      "hostname": "z33-dbz-priv1",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "vip_interfaces": [
    {
      "ip_address": "nnn.nnn.nnn.249",
      "hostname": "z33-dbz-vip",
      "is_scan": false,
      "allocated": true
    }
  ],
  "versaboot_interfaces": [],
  "state_str": "Configured",
  "accessible_groups": [
    {
      "id": 34,
```

```
        "name": "vm_8_owners"
      }
    ],
    "internal_name": "zone",
    "host_os": "s11",
    "host_type": "zone",
    "physical_type": "guest",
    "virtual_type": "zone",
    "state": 350,
    "primary_interface": "mgmt",
    "is_control_domain": false,
    "is_master_control_domain": false,
    "is_service_domain": false,
    "rac_id": 10,
    "active": true,
    "sanity_target": false,
    "physical_position_index": null,
    "timing": null,
    "net_config": 13,
    "ilom_interfaces": [],
    "memory": [],
    "cores": [],
    "physical_functions": [],
    "root_complexes": [],
    "variables": [],
    "accessible_users": [],
    "io_domains": [
      55
    ]
  }
]
```


Preparing to Configure a Database on a Database Domain or Database Zone

These topics describe how to prepare to configure a database on Database Domains or Database Zones:

- [“Prepare to Configure Databases” on page 233](#)
- [“Verify Storage Server Disk Space” on page 234](#)
- [“Obtain the Latest Version of OEDA” on page 235](#)
- [“Obtain the Latest Database Binary Files” on page 237](#)

▼ Prepare to Configure Databases

Complete these tasks before setting up a database on a Database I/O Domain or a Database Zone.

1. **Back up the data on your storage servers.**
2. **Plan the database and cluster layout.**

You must make the following decisions before you begin to configure databases on Database Domains or Database Zones:

- The number of clusters that you want to create, and the number of Database Domains or Database Zones that you want to have as members of each cluster.
- The starting IP addresses for the following networks for each cluster that you are creating:
 - 1GbE administration (management) network
 - 10GbE client access network
 - Private IB network
 - Backup/Data Guard network (optional)
- These IP addresses should be available in DNS and also through the `nslookup` tool for the host name listed in the `joc_import` file.

3. Plan the storage server layout.

You must make the following decisions on the storage server layout before beginning the processes in this document:

- The number of storage servers and the amount of disk space available for the Database Domains and clusters that you will be configuring.
- The size of the following disk groups for each cluster:
 - DATA
 - RECO
 - DBFS

▼ Verify Storage Server Disk Space

Before you set up Database I/O Domains or Database Zones, perform this procedure if SuperCluster contains existing databases.

Verify that the appropriate amount of disk space is available on the storage servers:

- If you are not sharing storage servers across clusters and you have entire storage servers available for the Database Domains or Database Zones, then you do not have to do anything more here. You can assign the entire storage servers to the new Database Domains or Database Zones as part of this procedure.
- If you are sharing storage servers across clusters, you must determine how much free space is available on the storage servers that you are using for these Database Domains or Database Zones before proceeding.



Caution - If you are sharing storage servers across clusters, you must follow the procedures in this section so that you have the correct information before deciding on the size of the disk groups for the new clusters that you plan to create. Failure to do so could result in your existing disk groups being overwritten.

1. Determine the amount of free space available on the storage servers.

```
CellCLI> list celldisk attributes name,freespace,freespacemap
```

For example:

```
CD_00_etc25celadm01 366.6875G ((offset=162.046875G,size=366.6875G))
CD_01_etc25celadm01 366.6875G ((offset=162.046875G,size=366.6875G))
CD_02_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_03_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_04_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
```

```

CD_05_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_06_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_07_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_08_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_09_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_10_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
CD_11_etc25celadm01 393.8125G ((offset=164.046875G,size=393.8125G))
FD_00_etc25celadm01 0
FD_01_etc25celadm01 0
FD_02_etc25celadm01 0
FD_03_etc25celadm01 0
FD_04_etc25celadm01 0
FD_05_etc25celadm01 0
FD_06_etc25celadm01 0
FD_07_etc25celadm01 0
FD_08_etc25celadm01 0
FD_09_etc25celadm01 0
FD_10_etc25celadm01 0
FD_11_etc25celadm01 0
FD_12_etc25celadm01 0
FD_13_etc25celadm01 0
FD_14_etc25celadm01 0
FD_15_etc25celadm01 0

```

2. **Examine the `CD_number` entries to determine the amount of available space on each of the storage servers.**
3. **Use the information on the amount of available space on each of the storage servers to determine how much space you can use for the disk groups for each new cluster you are creating.**

You need enough space for these disk groups for each new cluster that you are creating:

- DATA
- RECO
- DBFS (if necessary)

▼ Obtain the Latest Version of OEDA

1. **Log in to the Database Domain or the Database Zone Domain.**
2. **Download the latest version of OEDA:**
 - a. **Locate the My Oracle Support note that provides information on and access to the latest version of the OneCommand patch.**

The OneCommand patch provides two OEDA commands:

- `config.sh` – Starts the OEDA GUI that is used to create the database configuration file that is used by `install.sh`.
- `install.sh` – Provides a CLI set of scripts you run to install the database.

Access this My Oracle Support note:

<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=888828.1>

Note - Keep this support note available. Later in “[Obtain the Latest Database Binary Files](#)” on page 237, you obtain additional patches from this support note.

b. Select the most recent OneCommand patch that corresponds to the version of Oracle Database that you want.

Use the table shown under the heading title: Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA).



Caution - You must download patch 19766190 or later.

Typically, the most recent patch is shown at the top of the table, and will have a higher number than other patches. For example, Patch 18339988 would be a more recent version of the patch than Patch 18222644.

c. Select the appropriate option from the Platform (Language) field for the operating system on the machine that you are using for OEDA.

The options include:

- Apple Mac OS X (Intel) (64-bit)
- Microsoft screens (32-bit)
- Linux x86-64
- Oracle Solaris on x86-64 (64-bit)
- Oracle Solaris on SPARC (64-bit)

Note - The OEDA `config.sh` script (used in subsequent tasks) can be run on any system that is running one of the supported OSs. However, the OEDA `install.sh` script (also used in subsequent tasks) must be run on the first I/O Domain, which requires the Solaris (SPARC) version of OEDA. Later in “[Install Databases \(install.sh\)](#)” on page 263 The files created by the `config.sh` script can be used by the `install.sh` on the I/O Domain.

- d. **Click the Download button to download the patch.**
 - e. **Unzip the OneCommand patch zip file.**
- 3. Repeat this task if necessary.**
- You only need to install OEDA on one domain within a RAC:
- If you installed OEDA on a Database Domain, and you have other Database Domains in your SuperCluster that are on a separate RAC, repeat this task for one Database Domain in each RAC in your system.
 - If you installed OEDA on a Database Zone Domain, repeat this task for each Database Zone Domain in your system.
- 4. For each domain where you installed OEDA, obtain and install the latest database binary files.**
- Go to [“Obtain the Latest Database Binary Files” on page 237.](#)

▼ Obtain the Latest Database Binary Files

This task is similar to the previous task, but instead directs you to obtain the latest database binary files. Perform this procedure for every domain where you installed OEDA.

- 1. Ensure that the system running the OEDA has Oracle JRE 1.6 or later.**
- 2. Locate the `workDir` directory.**

By default, the `workDir` directory is located in the directory where you downloaded the OneCommand patch, as described in [“Obtain the Latest Version of OEDA” on page 235.](#)
- 3. Obtain and place all the necessary Oracle Database binary zip files into the `workDir` directory.**
 - a. **Go to this knowledge article:**
<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=888828.1>
 - b. **Using that knowledge article, obtain the binary zip files for the Database versions you want installed on Database I/O Domains. Obtain zip files for these items:**
 - Oracle Database software

- Patches

c. Place the binary zip files into the workDir directory.

These are examples of the binaries and patch zip files to place in the workDir directory:

- p13390677_112040_SOLARIS64_1of7.zip
- p13390677_112040_SOLARIS64_2of7.zip
- p13390677_112040_SOLARIS64_3of7.zip
- p17628025_112040_SOLARIS64.zip
- p6880880_112000_SOLARIS64.zip

4. Consider your next step.

Go to [“Creating Database Configuration Files \(OEDA\)”](#) on page 239.

Creating Database Configuration Files (OEDA)

These topics describe how to create configuration files using OEDA (the `config.sh` tool).

Note - The instructions in this section describe how to set up Database I/O Domains and Database Zones. Do not use these instructions for Application I/O Domains.

- [“Important Cautions” on page 239](#)
- [“Export an XML Configuration File” on page 240](#)
- [“Start OEDA” on page 242](#)
- [“Import the Most Recent Configuration File” on page 244](#)
- [“Review Existing Configuration Information” on page 244](#)
- [“Review the Identify Compute Node Operating System Page” on page 245](#)
- [“Review the Management and Private Networks Page” on page 246](#)
- [“Complete the Define Clusters Page” on page 248](#)
- [“Complete the Cluster Page” on page 252](#)
- [“Complete the Cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks Page” on page 258](#)
- [“Verify Remaining Configuration Information” on page 260](#)
- [“Generate the Configuration Files” on page 261](#)

Important Cautions



Caution - Ensure that you back up all existing databases before performing the tasks in this section.



Caution - You must use the latest version of OEDA and the Java OneCommand patch (patch 19766190 or later). Refer to the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) section in MOS Note 888828.1 for details.

▼ Export an XML Configuration File

Use this procedure to generate an XML file that will be used to provide database configuration information during the database installation.

These instructions assume that you have already performed these activities using the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant:

- Created two or more Database I/O Domains (for more information, see [“Create a Database I/O Domain” on page 97](#)).
- Deployed two or more Database I/O Domains (for more information, see [“Create a Database I/O Domain” on page 97](#)).
- Created two or more zones on Database Zone Domains (for more information, see [“Configuring Zones” on page 137](#)).

At this point, you have created and deployed Database I/O Domains or Database Zones, but have not set up the storage servers or the database software on the Database I/O Domains or Database Zones.

1. **Access the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.**
See [“Log In to the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant” on page 41](#).
2. **If additional storage servers were added to the system, configure the assistant with the appropriate type of storage server.**
See [“Configure the Assistant With Added Storage Servers \(Administrators\)” on page 59](#).
3. **Determine if you are configuring a Database Domain or a Database Zone.**
 - **If you are configuring a Database Domain:**
 - a. **In the navigation panel, select I/O Domain.**

- b. Select the check box next to each Database Domain that you want to configure.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' configuration page. The 'List of IO Domains' table has the following data:

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	1	Resources Allocated	View
<input type="checkbox"/> finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View

Below the table is the 'List of SCAN Address Groups' table:

Hostname	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3	VLAN Tag	Owner	RAC ID
io-scan-25	79.3	79.4	79.5	111	admin	1

- c. Go to [Step 4](#).

■ If you are configuring a Database Zone:

- a. In the navigation panel, select Zones.
- b. Select the check box next to each Database Zone that you want to configure.

If you have multiple database zones that are part of a single RAC, select those zones as shown below.

The screenshot shows the 'IO Domains' configuration page. The 'List of IO Domains' table has the following data:

Hostname	Domain Type	Physical Host	Owner	RAC ID	Zones	State	Details
<input type="checkbox"/> marketing	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View
<input type="checkbox"/> sales	Oracle Database Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	1	0	Resources Allocated	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> research	Oracle Database Zone Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	1	Resources Allocated	View
<input type="checkbox"/> finance	Solaris 11 Application Domain	M8 PDOM 1	admin	n/a	0	Ready for Use	View

- c. Go to [Step 4](#).

4. Click **Export for JOC**.

A screen appears, asking where you want to save this configuration file. This action creates a configuration file that is later used by the `config.sh` command to install the database.

5. Navigate to a directory where you want to save the configuration file.

By default, the configuration file is named `joc_import.xml`. Rename this configuration file with a unique name to distinguish it from other configuration files.

6. Click Save.

7. Start OEDA.

Go to [“Start OEDA” on page 242](#).

▼ Start OEDA

1. Change to the directory that was created after you unzipped the OneCommand (Ocmd) ZIP file.

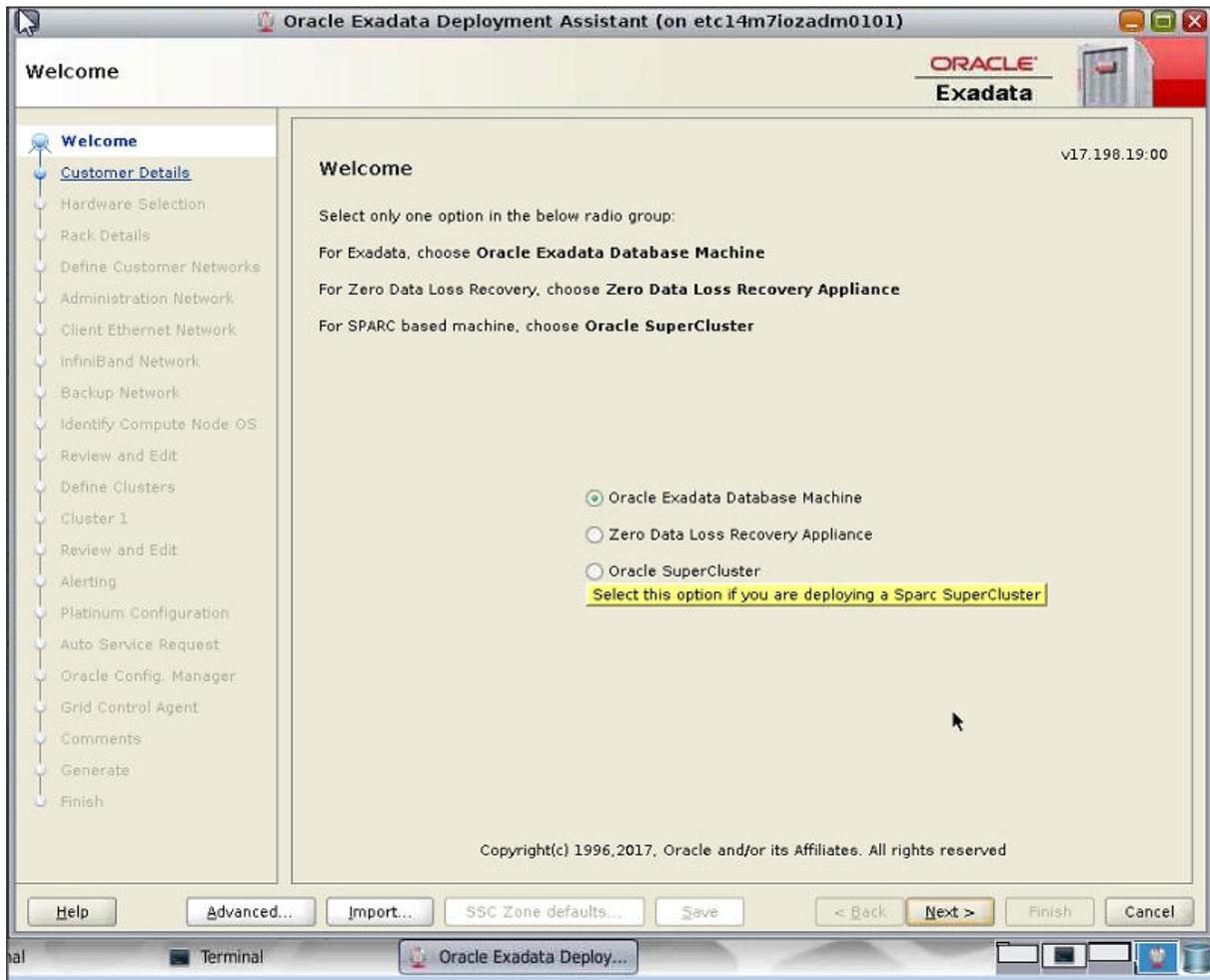
2. Start OEDA.

- On Linux, MacOS, or the Oracle Solaris OS:

```
config.sh
```

- On Microsoft Windows:

config.cmd



3. Import the OEDA XML input file.

Go to [“Import the Most Recent Configuration File”](#) on page 244.

▼ Import the Most Recent Configuration File

1. **At the bottom of the Welcome page, click Import.**
A pop-up window is displayed, with the default location at the OneCommand directory.
2. **Navigate to the folder that contains the configuration files for the Database Domains or Database Zones that you are configuring.**
See [“Export an XML Configuration File” on page 240.](#)

Tip - If you ran the assistant on a remote system and saved the XML configuration file using Export for JOC onto that system, you might have to manually move that XML configuration file from the remote system to the system where you are currently running OEDA so that you can easily import the file into OEDA.

3. **Within that folder, import the configuration file.**
Verify that the configuration file is the correct file for the appropriate Database Domains or Database Zones that you are configuring, and not an older configuration file for any Database I/O Domains that you configured previously.
4. **Click Next.**
5. **Verify the configuration information.**
Go to [“Review Existing Configuration Information” on page 244.](#)

▼ Review Existing Configuration Information

After importing the configuration file for the Database I/O Domains or Database Zones that you created, the fields in each of the pages in OEDA are populated with information that you provided for that configuration. That information includes the IP addresses and host names for each network for all of the components and domains in your Oracle SuperCluster. If you are setting up Database Domains on a system that was correctly configured, do not modify any of the information in the first set of screens in OEDA. If you selected Database Zones in the configuration, OEDA will create those zones as part of the deployment process.

1. **Review the existing configuration information.**

Note - Do not change any of the information in the following pages.

Go through the following pages in OEDA, reviewing the configuration information and clicking Next at the bottom of each page.

- Customer Details page
- Hardware Selection page
- Define Customer Networks page
- Administration Network page
- Client Ethernet Network page
- IB Network page
- Backup/Data Guard page

Stop when the Identify Compute Node Operating System page is displayed.

2. **Review the information in the Identify Compute Node Operating System page.**

Go to [“Review the Identify Compute Node Operating System Page”](#) on page 245.

▼ Review the Identify Compute Node Operating System Page

1. **Review the information in the Identify Compute Node Operating System page.**

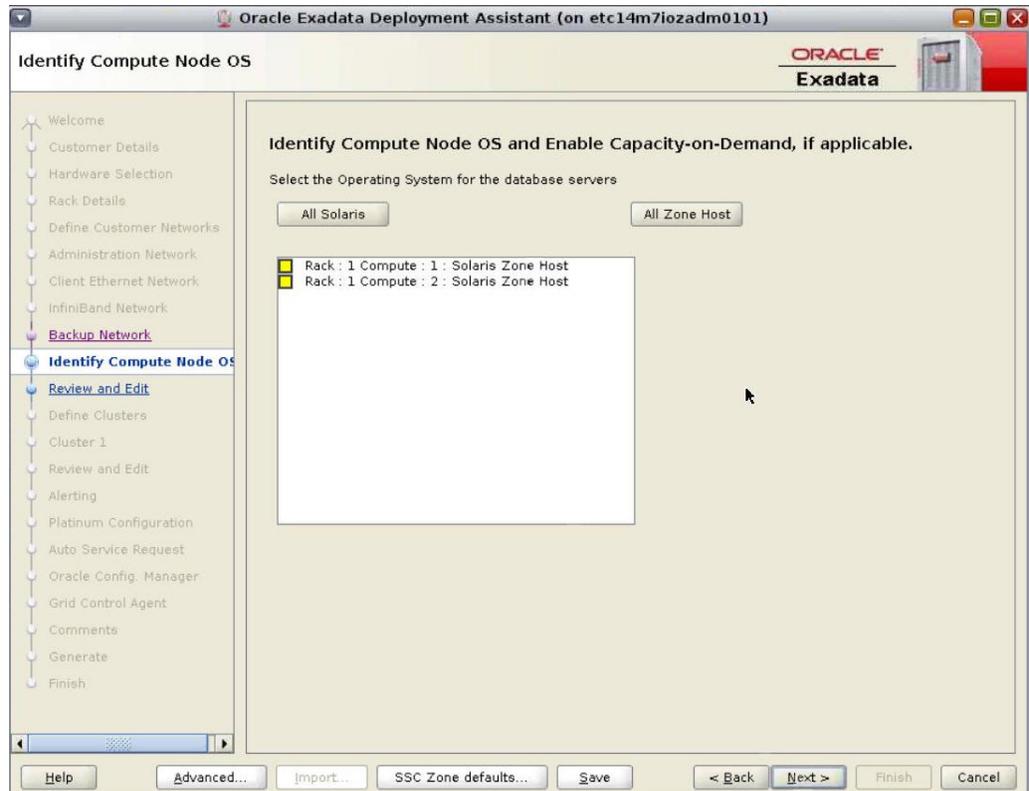
Note - Do not change any of the information in the Identify Compute Node Operating System page.

The Identify Compute Node OS page displays the Database I/O Domains and Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that you want to configure when you selected specific Database I/O Domains or database zones in the procedure in [“Export an XML Configuration File”](#) on page 240.

In this screen, these domains are displayed in this manner:

- Database Zone Domains – Shown as Solaris Zone Host
- Database I/O Domains – Shown as Physical Solaris

Note - The database zones within the Database Zone Domains will not be displayed on this page. Only the Database Zone Domains that house the database zones are displayed.



2. **Click Next.**
3. **Review the information in the Management and Private Networks page.**
Go to [“Review the Management and Private Networks Page”](#) on page 246.

▼ **Review the Management and Private Networks Page**

1. **Review the information in the Management and Private Networks page.**

Note - Do not change any of the information in the Management and Private Networks page.

The Management and Private Networks page displays management and IB network address and host name information for these components:

- Database Domains
- Database Zones
- Storage servers
- Switches and [PDU](#)

The screenshot shows the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) interface. The title bar reads "Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (on etc14m7iozadm0101)". The window is titled "Review and Edit" and features the Oracle Exadata logo in the top right corner. A left-hand navigation pane lists various steps, with "Review and Edit" selected. The main content area is titled "Management and Private Networks" and contains the following text:

This page captures node specific data for the Management, ILOM and Private Networks for the Compute Nodes, Storage Cells and the switches used in the Rack. The Client, VIP, SCAN and backup network names/IP address are collected later in the interview process.

* Indicates host name or IP address that could not be resolved, and the Lookup IP button may not provide immediate feedback to the screen reader

Buttons for "Re-Generate Data" and "Lookup IP" are visible. Below this, the configuration is organized by "Rack 1" and lists several nodes with their respective network details:

Node Name	Rack Location	Admin Name	Admin IP	ILOM Name	ILOM IP	Priv Name	Priv IP
Exadata SuperCluster M7 Compute Node 1 - Zone Host	Rack 1 - Rack Location 8	etc14m7iozadm0101	101.204	etc14m7-chassis0-sp	101.195	4m7iozadm0101-priv1	8.10.38
Exadata SuperCluster M7 Compute Node 2 - Zone Host	Rack 1 - Rack Location 27	etc14m7iozadm0201	101.206	etc14m7-chassis0-sp	101.195	4m7iozadm0201-priv1	8.10.39
Exadata Cell Node HC 4TB 1	Rack 1 - Rack Location 2	etc14m7celadm01	101.175	etc14m7celadm01-ilom	101.188	etc14m7cel01-priv1	10.25
Exadata Cell Node HC 4TB 2	Rack 1 - Rack Location 4	etc14m7celadm02	101.176	etc14m7celadm02-ilom	101.188	etc14m7cel02-priv1	10.25

At the bottom of the window, there are several buttons: "Help", "Advanced...", "Import...", "SSC Zone defaults...", "Save", "< Back", "Next >", "Finish", and "Cancel".

2. Ensure that the management and private network names here match the ones in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

If the management and private network names do not match the ones in the assistant, update them here.

If your IP addresses are available in DNS or you used the `nslookup` tool to verify the host names listed in the `joc_import` file, go to [Step 3](#).

If the management and private network names do not match the ones in the assistant, update them here.

3. Click Next.

4. Complete the Define Clusters page.

Go to [“Complete the Define Clusters Page”](#) on page 248.

▼ Complete the Define Clusters Page

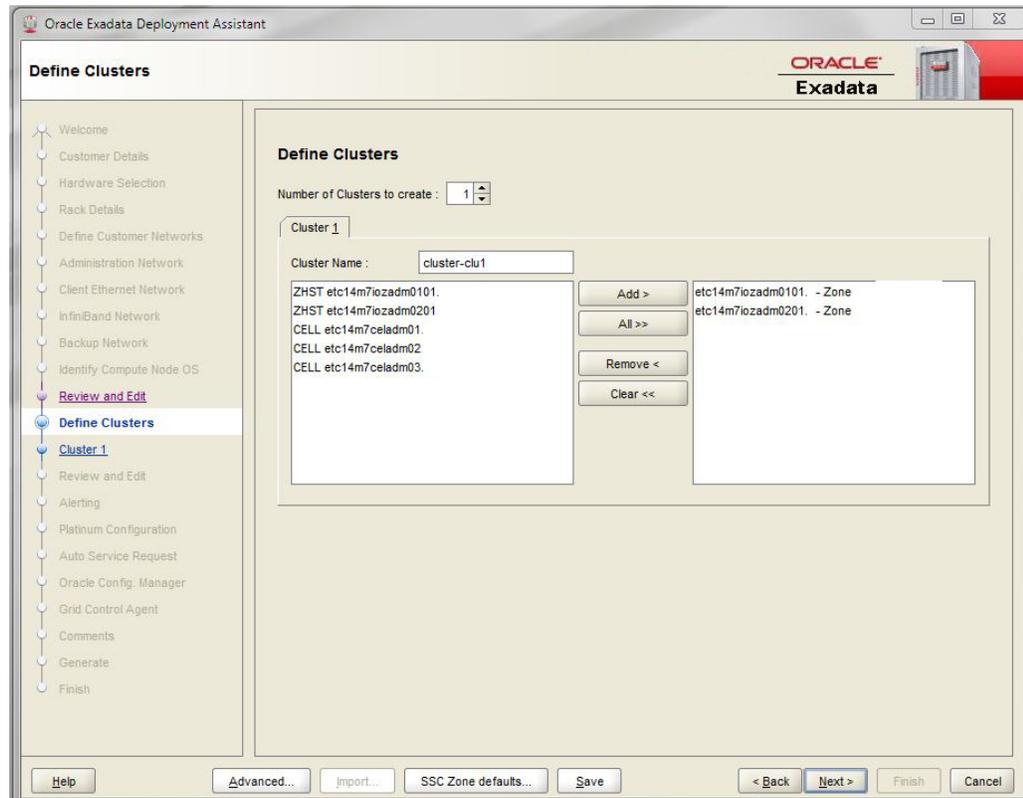
1. Review the information in the Define Clusters page.

The Define Clusters page should show the Database I/O Domains or the Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that you are configuring and the storage servers that are installed in your Oracle SuperCluster.

For example, assume you have the following configuration:

- Oracle SuperCluster M8 and SuperCluster M7, with three storage servers

- Two Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that you are currently configuring



This configuration also assumes this information:

- The two Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that you are configuring are shown with the ZHST prefix.
 - The three storage servers in your Oracle SuperCluster are shown with the CELL prefix.
 - If you were configuring a Database Domain, it will have the PHY prefix.
2. **Determine how you want to configure the Database Domains or the database zones within the Database Zone Domains.**

Make these configuration decisions before proceeding.

- a. **Determine which Database Domains will be part of the cluster, or which Database Zone Domains contain the database zones that will be part of the cluster.**
 - b. **Determine which storage servers are to be used with each cluster.**
3. **Ensure that the number of clusters to create is set to 1.**
 4. **Enter these changes:**
 - a. **Click the tab for the cluster that you want to create.**

In this example, click Cluster 1.
 - b. **Enter a unique name within your organization for the cluster.**

By default, a cluster name of `cluster-clunumber` is assigned to the cluster (such as `cluster-clu1`). You might experience problems with Enterprise Manager if multiple systems have the same cluster names across systems, so you must change the default cluster name to a unique name within your organization (for example, `systemname-clusternumber`, such as `scM701-clu1`). The name cannot be longer than 15 characters.
 - c. **Determine if the right pane is already populated with the Database I/O Domains or Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that will be part of the cluster.**

The Database I/O Domains are identified as PHY and the Database Zone Domains are identified as ZHST in the left pane.

 - **If the right pane is already populated with the Database I/O Domains or Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that will be part of the cluster, go to [Step 4d](#).**

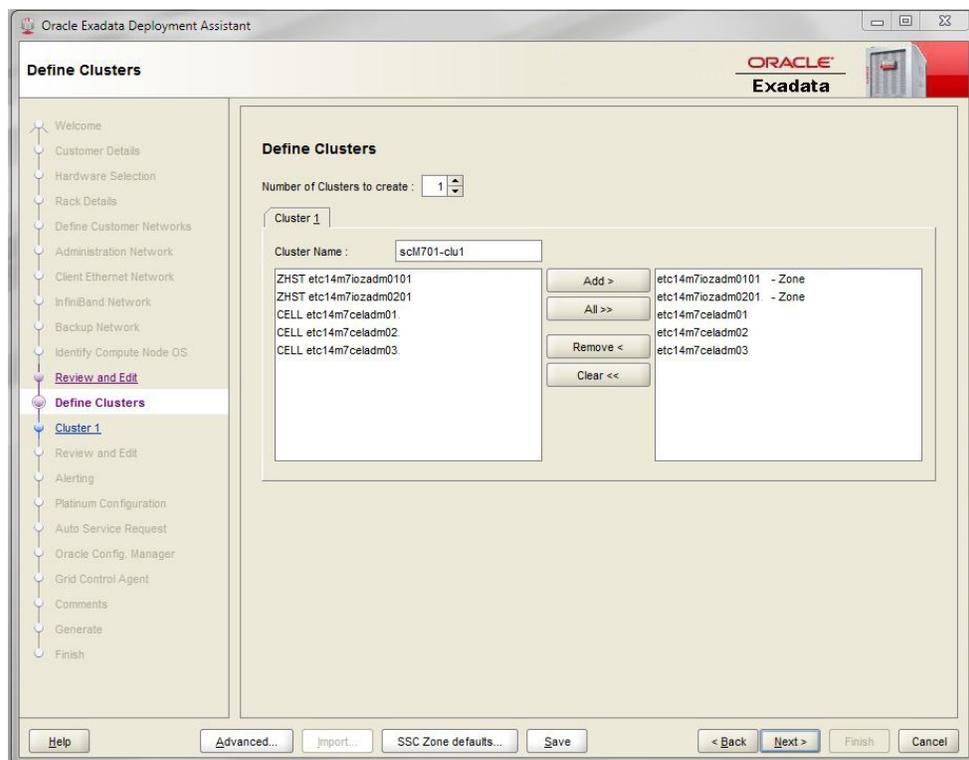
For example, using the example configuration shown in the preceding figure, you would see that the right pane is already populated with the two Database Zone Domains (`etc14m7iozadm0101.us.example.com` and `etc14m7iozadm0201.us.example.com`).
 - **If the right pane is not already populated with the correct domains, select the Database I/O Domains or the Database Zone Domains that contain the database zones that you want to add and click Add.**
 - d. **Select the storage servers that are part of this cluster and click Add.**

Note - Oracle Support Best Practices dictate that you assign all storage servers to each cluster rather than split the storage servers between the clusters.

Note - If you are sharing storage servers across clusters, confirm that the storage servers that you are adding to this cluster have enough available space to use for these new clusters. See [“Verify Storage Server Disk Space” on page 234](#) for more information.

This figure shows an example of a new cluster, where these components are assigned to the cluster:

- The two Database Zone Domains
- All three storage servers



5. **After you have assigned Database Domains and storage servers to the cluster, click Next.**
6. **Complete the Cluster page for each cluster that you want to create.**
Go to [“Complete the Cluster Page”](#) on page 252.

▼ Complete the Cluster Page



Caution - Take extreme care when specifying the DATA and RECO disk group names. The names must be unique for the cluster you are defining. Check existing grid disks on the storage cells and ensure that they are not already in use. If an existing grid disk is specified for a new cluster, the griddisk is dropped and recreated by older versions of Java OneCommand (prior to patch 19766190), possibly resulting in loss of production data.

The left pane displays a cluster configuration page for each new cluster that you are creating.

1. Review the cluster configuration page for the first new cluster that you are creating.

The screenshot displays the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) interface for configuring 'Cluster 1'. The left sidebar shows a navigation tree with 'Define Clusters' selected, and 'Cluster 1' is the active configuration. The main area contains the following configuration details:

- Cluster 1**
 - Cluster name: `scM701-clu1` (Zones Cluster)
 - Virtual Guest size: `Small` (Cores: 2, Local Disk: 60GB)
 - Guest Image Version: `default`
 - Prefix: `etc14m7` (Reset name masks)
 - DNS: [Empty field]
 - NTP: [Empty field]
 - Domain Name: `us.oracle.com`
 - Region: `America` (TimeZone: `Los_Angeles`)
 - Writeback Flash Cache
- Users and Groups**
 - Role Separated
 - User name: `oracle` (ID: 1000, base: `/u01/app/oracle`)
 - DBA Group name: `dba` (ID: 1002)
 - ONINSTALL Group name: `bininstall` (ID: 1001)
- Software Locations**
 - Inventory Location: `/u01/app/orainventory`
 - Grid Infrastructure Home: `11.2.0.4 BP170418` (Path: `/u01/app/11.2.0.4/grid`)
 - Database Home Location: `11.2.0.4 BP170418` (Path: `/u01/app/oracle/product/11.2.0.4/dbhome_1`)
- Disk Group Details**
 - Diskgroup Layout: Legacy 80%:20% Legacy 40%:60% Custom

At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Help', 'Advanced...', 'Import...', 'SSC Zone defaults...', 'Save', '< Back', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

2. Under **Software Locations**, define the database versions for these items:

- Grid Infrastructure Home
- Database Home Location

3. Under **Disk Group Details**, provide this information:

- In the Diskgroup Layout, chose one of these options:
 - Legacy 80%:20% – Assigns the following sizes to the disk groups:

- DBFS Diskgroup: Default size (the default size for the DBFS disk group in this selection is the size of the operating system disk slice on disks 0 and 1, which is usually between 29 GB and 31 GB)
- DATA Diskgroup: 80% size
- RECO Diskgroup: 20% size



Caution - Choose Legacy only if you have dedicated storage cells per cluster and no storage cell sharing.

- Legacy 40%:60% – Assigns the following sizes to the disk groups:
 - DBFS Diskgroup: Default size (the default size for the DBFS disk group in this selection is the size of the OS disk slice on disks 0 and 1, which is usually between 29 GB and 31 GB.)
 - DATA Diskgroup: 40% size
 - RECO Diskgroup: 60% size



Caution - Choose Legacy only if you have dedicated storage cells per cluster and no storage cell sharing.

- Custom – Allows you to assign your own sizes to the disk groups
- Specify a unique name for the disk groups for this cluster. For this example, these names are specified.

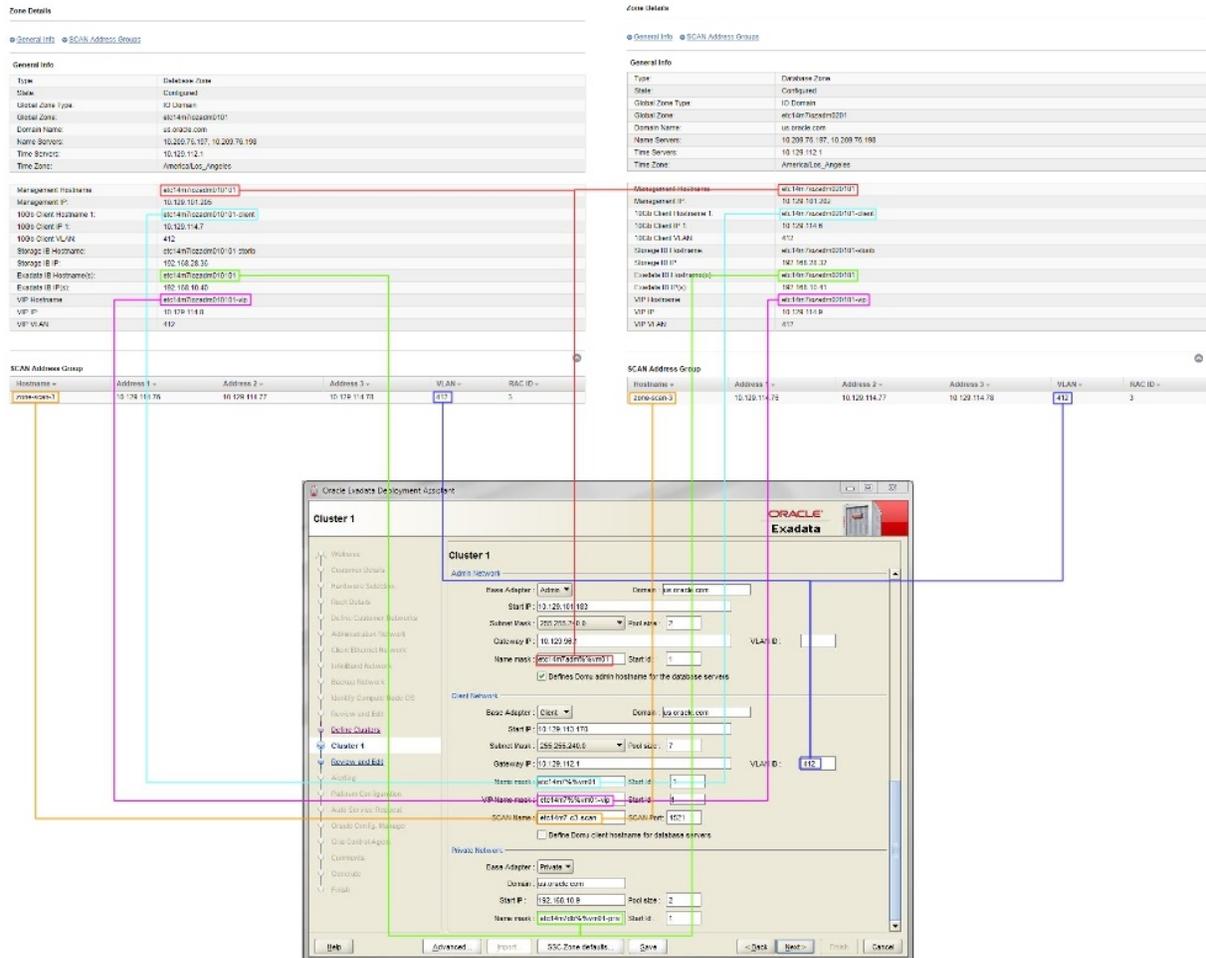
Note - Diskgroup names have a maximum of eight characters.

- DBFS Diskgroup: DBFS_DG
- DATA Diskgroup: DATA1
- RECO Diskgroup: RECO1
- Select the level of redundancy for the disk groups (DBFS, DATA, and RECO):
 - UNUSED (DBFS disk group only)
 - NORMAL
 - HIGH
- Configure the size of the disk groups (DBFS, DATA, and RECO) for this cluster.

Note - If you are sharing storage servers across clusters, follow the instructions in [“Verify Storage Server Disk Space” on page 234](#) to determine the amount of free space that you have in the storage servers for each disk group. In this case, use a custom sizing for the disk groups.

4. **Make cluster-specific changes to the Database Name field, if necessary.**
5. **Verify that the host name (name mask), SCAN name and VLAN information is correct in the networks area at the bottom of the page (Admin Network, Client Network and Private Network).**
 - a. **In the assistant window for your SuperCluster, select Zones in the navigation panel, then click View in the Details column for each of the database zones that are part of this cluster.**
 - b. **Note the following entries for each database zone in the Zone Details screens through the assistant:**
 - Management Hostname
 - 10Gb Client Hostname 1
 - Exadata IB Hostname
 - VIP Hostname
 - Hostname and VLAN tag for SCAN Address Group
 - c. **Locate the following entries in the networks area at the bottom of the Cluster 1 page in OEDA:**
 - Admin Network:
 - Name mask
 - Client Network:
 - Name mask
 - VIP Name mask
 - SCAN Name
 - VLAN ID
 - Private Network:
 - Name mask
 - d. **Compare the entries between the Zone Details screens in the assistant and the Cluster 1 page in OEDA.**

This figure shows how the entries from the two database zones in the Zone Details screens in the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant map to the entries in the networks area at the bottom of the Cluster 1 page in OEDA.



- e. Make the appropriate edits in the Cluster 1 page in OEDA to match the entries from the Zone Details pages in the assistant for each database zone that is part of this cluster.

Note the following:

- Certain entries in the Cluster 1 page in OEDA have a single field that would be populated using multiple entries from the individual Zone Details screens in the assistant. For example, there is a single Admin Network: Name mask field in OEDA that is populated using the Management Hostname entries from the Zone Details screens in the assistant for each database zone that is part of the cluster, such as `etc14m7iozadm010101` for the first database zone and `etc14m7iozadm020101` for the second database zone in the assistant. OEDA will use the percentage sign (%) as a wildcard in these cases (in this example, using `etc14m7iozadm0%0101` in the Admin Network Name mask field in OEDA).
- The following suffixes should be appended at the end of the following entries in the Cluster 1 page in OEDA, even if these suffixes don't appear in the Zone Details pages in the assistant:
 - `-client` at the end of the entry used in the Client Network: Name mask field.
 - `-vip` at the end of the entry used in the Client Network: VIP Name mask field.

This table shows example entries that might be found in the individual Zone Details pages in the assistant for each database zone and the entries that should be used in the Cluster 1 page in OEDA.

Example Entry in the Assistant for Database Zone 1	Example Entry in the Assistant for Database Zone 2	Example Entry in Cluster 1 page in OEDA
Management Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm010101</code>	Management Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm020101</code>	Admin Network: Name mask: <code>etc14m7iozadm0%0101</code>
10Gb Client Hostname 1: <code>etc14m7iozadm010101-client</code>	10Gb Client Hostname 1: <code>etc14m7iozadm020101-client</code>	Client Network: Name mask: <code>etc14m7iozadm0%0101-client</code>
Exadata IB Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm010101</code>	Exadata IB Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm020101</code>	Private Network: Name mask: <code>etc14m7iozadm0%0101-priv1</code>
VIP Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm010101-vip</code>	VIP Hostname: <code>etc14m7iozadm020101-vip</code>	Client Network: VIP Name mask: <code>etc14m7iozadm0%0101-vip</code>
SCAN Address Group: Hostname: <code>zone-scan-3</code>	SCAN Address Group: Hostname: <code>zone-scan-3</code>	Client Network: SCAN Name: <code>zone-scan-3</code>
SCAN Address Group: VLAN: <code>412</code>	SCAN Address Group: VLAN: <code>412</code>	Client Network: VLAN ID: <code>412</code>

6. Review the rest of the information in this page and make changes as necessary.
7. After you have completed the page for this cluster, click Next.

8. **Complete the cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks page.**

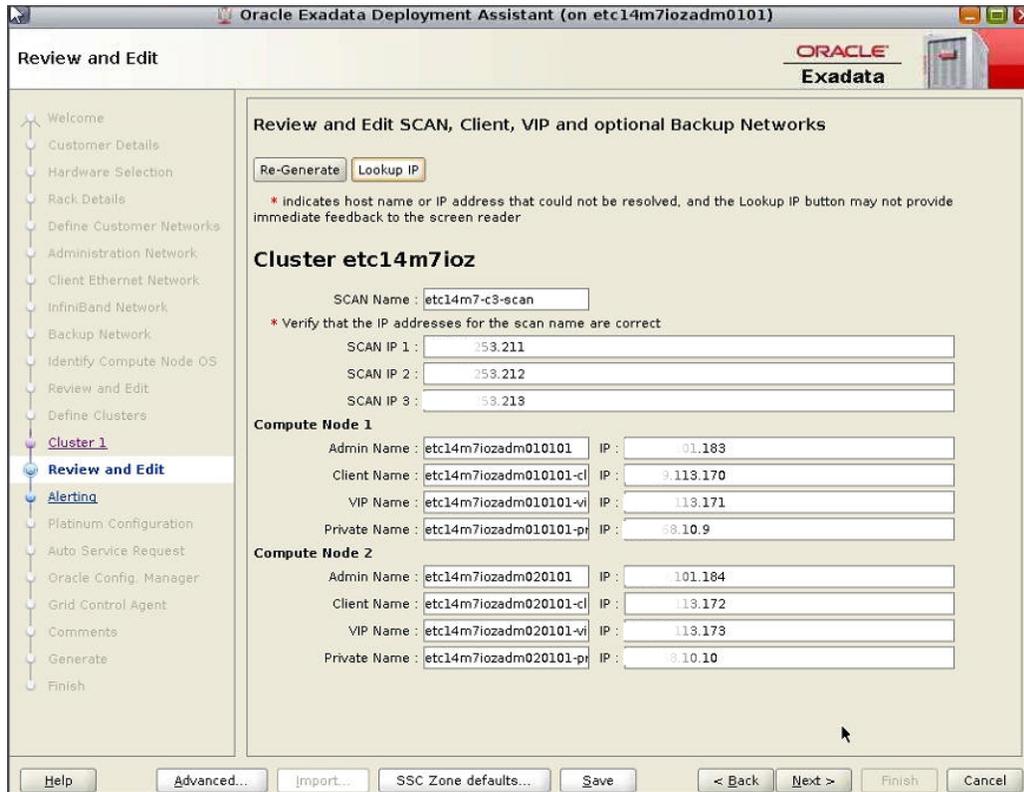
Go to [“Complete the Cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks Page”](#) on page 258.

▼ **Complete the Cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks Page**

1. **Review the information in the cluster Review and Edit SCAN, Client, VIP, and Optional Backup Networks page, and make any necessary changes.**

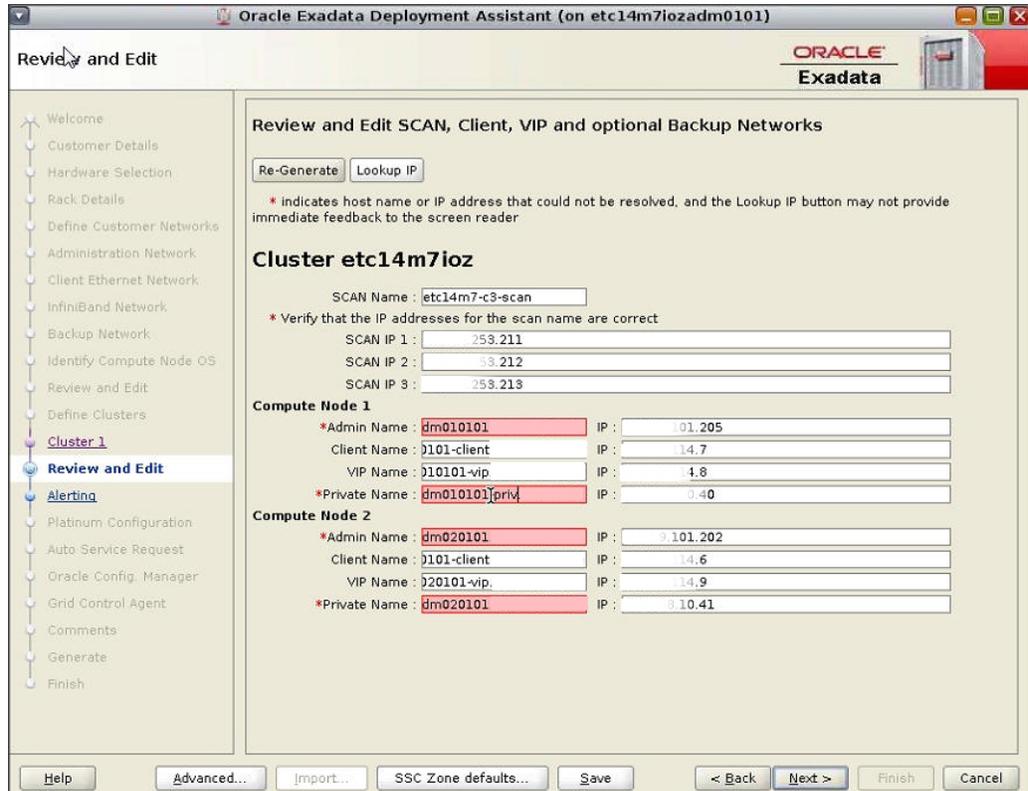
The new clusters are displayed with the Database I/O Domains as part of those clusters.

2. Click Re-Generate to populate updated information from the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.



3. Click Lookup IP to resolve the host name or IP addresses.

Highlighted red fields indicate host names that could not be resolved. Click Re-Generate to automatically populate this screen with the correct private host names or edit the host names on this screen. You can also manually edit the XML configuration file.



4. Click Next.
5. Verify that the remaining configuration information is correct.
Go to [“Verify Remaining Configuration Information”](#) on page 260.

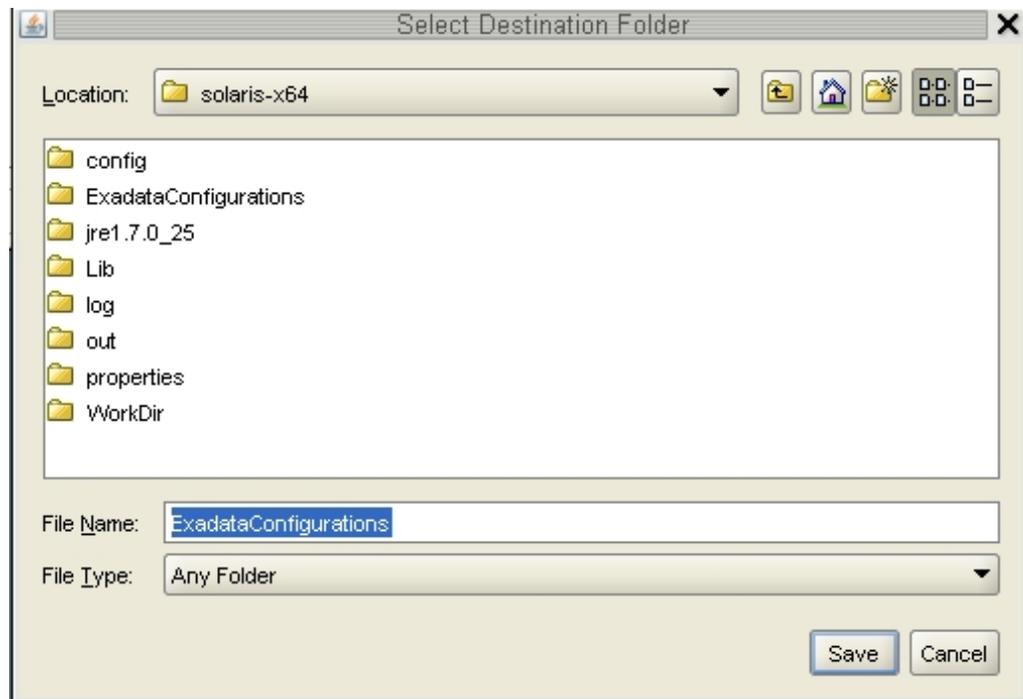
▼ Verify Remaining Configuration Information

1. Verify that the configuration information in the following screens is correct:
 - Cell Alerting page

- Oracle Configuration Manager page
 - Auto Service Request
 - Grid Control Agent
2. In the **Comments** page, provide additional information that might be useful for this deployment, then click **Next**.
 3. **Generate the configuration files.**
Go to [“Generate the Configuration Files”](#) on page 261.

▼ Generate the Configuration Files

1. In the **Generate** page, click **Next**.



2. **Navigate to the appropriate directory, enter the name for the configuration folder for this deployment, and click Save.**

3. Click Finish.

4. Verify that the Database I/O Domain and cluster configuration files are in the configuration folder for this deployment.

If you navigate to the configuration folder with the new configuration files for this deployment, you will see these files:

- Two new individual configuration files for the two clusters that you added (shown as *customer-name-name-prefix-cluster-clucluster-number.xml*)
- A single updated master file that contains the configuration information for the Database I/O Domains and clusters that you set up on your system (shown as *customer-name-name-prefix.xml*)

5. Install databases on Database I/O Domains.

Go to [“Installing Databases on a Database Domain”](#) on page 263.

Installing Databases on a Database Domain

These topics describe how to install Oracle Databases on Database I/O Domains.

- [“Important Cautions” on page 263](#)
- [“Install Databases \(install.sh\)” on page 263](#)

Important Cautions



Caution - Ensure that you back up all existing databases before running the `install.sh` script.



Caution - You must use the latest version of OEDA and the Java OneCommand patch (patch 19766190 or later). Refer to the Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant (OEDA) section in MOS Note 888828.1 for details.



Caution - Any version of Java OneCommand prior to patch 19766190 can destroy the storage cell disks and griddisk if an undo option is performed on certain steps (Create Cell disk, for example). This can cause complete destruction of all the griddisks on the storage cells. In addition, rerunning the griddisk creation step or mistakenly specifying a non-unique diskgroup in OEDA results in the destruction of existing griddisks. Be aware that older versions of Java OneCommand also destroy cell disks and griddisks with the Create Cell Disks step.

▼ Install Databases (`install.sh`)

Before You Begin Before you perform this procedure, you must set up passwordless SSH for the root user to the [ZFS storage appliance](#). OEDA calls the `ssc_exavm` file, which calls the `iscsi-zpoo.sh` script to create an iSCSI LUN for the zone root filesystem/rpool.

1. **Verify that you added passwordless SSH for the root user to the ZFS storage appliance.**
2. **Locate the configuration files that were generated at the end of the OEDA process when you set up the Database I/O Domains and clusters.**

The configuration files for the new clusters that you created should be named *customer-name-name-prefix-cluster-clucluster-number.xml*.

3. **Locate the database installation script called `install.sh`.**

By default, the `Jinstall.sh` script is located in the directory where you downloaded the OneCommand patch, as described in [“Obtain the Latest Version of OEDA” on page 235](#).

4. **Using a new cluster configuration file, display the list of functions that can be performed by the `install.sh` script.**

```
./install.sh -cf /path-to-config-file/customer-name.name-prefix.xml -l
```

For example:

```
./install.sh -cf /path-to-config-file/example-osc01-cluster-clu1.xml -l
```

Information similar to the following is displayed:

1. Validate Configuration File
2. Create Virtual Machine
3. Setup Required Files
4. Create Users
5. Setup Cell Connectivity
6. Verify InfiniBand
7. Calibrate Cells
8. Create Cell Disks
9. Create Grid Disks
10. Install Cluster Software
11. Initialize Cluster Software
12. Install Database Software
13. Relink Database with RDS
14. Create ASM Diskgroups
15. Create Databases
16. Apply Security Fixes
17. Create Installation Summary
18. Resecure Machine

The output that you see, and the number assigned to each step varies depending on the configuration choices you made in OEDA.

Tip - For a Database Zone deployment, an additional step called *Create Virtual Machines* is performed between Steps 1 and 2 in the list above. This step creates the zones.

5. Important – Do not run any of the steps listed below.

- Verify InfiniBand (Step 6 in the example output above)
- Create cell disks (Step 8 in the example output above)
- Resecure machine (Step 19 in the example output above)
- Configure cell alerting (not shown in the example output above)

6. Run the appropriate steps, using the cluster configuration file that was generated at the end of the OEDA process as input.

```
./install.sh -cf customer-name.name-prefix.xml -s step-number
```

where *step-number* is the number of each step that you are running, in order. For example:

```
./install.sh -cf example-osc01-cluster-clu6.xml -s 1
```



Caution - Run all of the steps **except for the following**:

- Verify InfiniBand
 - Create cell disks
 - Resecure machine
 - Configure cell alerting
-

You can also run a series of steps by using the `-r` option. For example, if you wanted to run steps 1 through 4, type:

```
./install.sh -cf example-osc01-cluster-clu6.xml -r 1-4
```

7. Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 6](#) for each new cluster configuration file that you generated at the end of the `config.sh` process.

8. (Platinum Monitored Systems) Create platinum infrastructure services for each new I/O Domain you create.

For instructions, log in to <https://support.oracle.com>, and read the MOS knowledge article called *How to Create Platinum Infrastructure Services SR (Doc ID 1958476.1)*. Follow the instructions. For the Engineered System and Target, select SuperCluster. For problem type, select Agent Management.

Glossary

A

Application Domain An I/O domain that runs Oracle Solaris and client applications.

C

CI Solaris Custom Incorporations. Starting with the Oct 2016 QFSDP, IDRs have been replaced with Solaris CIs.

compute server Shortened name for the SPARC server, a major component of SuperCluster.

D

Database Domain The I/O domain that contains the SuperCluster database.

DB Oracle Database.

dedicated domain A SuperCluster LDom category that includes the domains configured at installation time as either a Database Domain or an Application Domain (running the Oracle Solaris 11 OS). Dedicated domains have direct access to the 10GbE NICs and IB HCAs (and Fibre Channel cards, if present). See also [Database Domain](#) and [Application Domain](#).

G

GB Gigabyte. 1 gigabyte = 1024 megabytes.

GbE Gigabit Ethernet.

I

I/O Domain If you have Root Domains, you create I/O Domains with your choice of resources at the time. The SuperCluster Virtual Assistant lets you assign resources to I/O Domains from the CPU and memory repositories, and from virtual functions hosted by Root Domains. When you create an I/O Domain, you assign it as a Database Domain or Application Domain running the Oracle Solaris 11 OS. See also [Root Domains](#).

I/O Domain Creation Tool The original name of the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant. See [SuperCluster Virtual Assistant](#).

L

LDom Logical domain. A virtual machine comprising a discrete logical grouping of resources that has its own OS and identity within a single computer system. LDomS are created using Oracle VM Server for SPARC software.

M

MOS My Oracle Support.

O

OEDA Oracle Exadata Deployment Assistant.

Oracle Solaris OS Oracle Solaris operating system.

P

parked resources CPU and memory resources that are set aside in the CPU and memory repositories. You assign parked resources to I/O Domains with the SuperCluster Virtual Assistant.

PDomain	Physical domain. Each PDomain on the compute server is an independently configurable and bootable entity with full hardware domain isolation for fault isolation and security.
PDU	Power distribution unit.
PF	Physical function. Functions provided by physical I/O devices, such as the IB HCAs, 10GbE NICs, and any Fibre Channel cards installed in the PCIe slots. Logical devices, or virtual functions (VFs), are created from PFs, with each PF hosting 32 VFs.
R	
RAC	Real Application Cluster.
Root Domains	A logical domain that is configured at installation time. Root Domains are required if you plan to configure I/O Domains. Root Domains host PFs from which I/O Domains derive VFs. The majority of Root Domain CPU and memory resources are parked for later use by I/O Domains.
S	
SCAN	Single Client Access Name. A feature used in RAC environments that provides a single name for clients to access any Oracle Database running in a cluster. See also RAC .
SPARC M7 or M8 server	A major component of SuperCluster that provides the main compute resources. Referred to in this documentation using the shortened name “compute server.” See also compute server .
SRU	Support Repository Update. For example, Oracle Solaris 11 SRU22.
SuperCluster Virtual Assistant	Enables you to manage the life cycle of I/O domains on SuperCluster systems. Formerly called the I/O Domain Creation Tool.
V	
VF	Virtual function. Logical I/O devices that are created from PFs.
VIP	Virtual IP.
VLAN tag	Segregates traffic between network interfaces, so that you see only the traffic on your virtual network.

Z

ZFS A file system with added volume management capabilities. ZFS is the default file system in Oracle Solaris 11.

ZFS storage appliance Shortened name for Oracle ZFS Storage Appliance.

Index

Numbers and Symbols

- 10GBE interface
 - Application Domain, 114
 - Database Domain, 100
 - Database Zone Domain, 107
 - domain created with an OVM template, 124

A

- accessing
 - REST APIs, 171
 - SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 27, 41
- activity, monitoring, 163
- adding users, 64
- adding VLAN tags, 56
- administrative task overview, 20
- administrator
 - navigation panel, 14
 - role, 61
- allocating resources to users, 66
- allocation planning, 62
- API, SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 171
- Application I/O Domain
 - CIs and SRUs, 133
 - creating, 113
 - description, 23
- authentication token, getting, 171
- Authorize button, REST API, 172
- availability of the assistant, checking, 18

C

- catalog of REST APIs, accessing, 172

- changing passwords
 - administrator, 71
 - user, 69
- checking availability of the assistant, 18
- CI, 133
- cluster nodes
 - deleting all, 160
 - deleting one, 159
- Cluster page, completing, 252
- Cluster Review page, completing, 258
- configuration files
 - creating with OEDA, 239
 - exporting for Database I/O Domains, 240
 - generating from OEDA, 261
 - importing, 244
- configuration information, reviewing, 244
- configuring
 - a zone on a Database Zone Domain, 137
 - assistant with added storage servers, 59
 - IP address assignments, 36
- CPU repository, 24
- CPU resources, viewing and managing, 45
- creating
 - Application I/O Domain, 113
 - configuration files for Database I/O Domains, 240
 - configuration files with OEDA, 239
 - Database I/O Domain, 97
 - Database Zone I/O Domain, 105
 - I/O Domains, 91
 - multiple client networks
 - Application I/O Domain, 117
 - Database I/O Domain, 101, 140
 - Database Zone I/O Domain, 109
 - domain created with an OVM template, 124

- network recipes, 84
 - resource recipes, 82
- D**
- Database I/O Domain
 - creating, 97
 - description, 23
 - transforming into a Database Zone Domain, 131
 - Database Zone Domain
 - configuring a zone, 137
 - creating, 105
 - description, 23
 - transforming a Database Domain, 131
 - database, obtaining the latest binary files, 237
 - dedicated domain
 - description, 23
 - dedicated domains
 - viewing, 48
 - Dedicated Domains screen, 48
 - default
 - login credentials, 41
 - resource recipes, 79
 - Define Clusters page, completing, 248
 - deleting
 - a domain, 159, 161
 - all nodes from a cluster, 160
 - recipes, 87
 - single nodes from a cluster, 159
 - users (administrator), 76
 - VLAN tags, 57
 - deploying I/O Domains, 133
 - determining resource availability, 148
 - disk space
 - verifying for a Database Domain, 234
 - verifying for a Database Zone, 234
 - domains
 - configuration task overview, 21
 - creating a Database I/O Domain, 97
 - creating a Database Zone I/O Domain, 105
 - creating Application I/O Domain, 113
 - deleting, 159, 161
 - deploying, 91
 - description of resources, 24
 - freezing and thawing, 147
 - iSCSI LUN resources, 58
 - overview, 23, 23
 - relocating, 147
 - user planning worksheet, 63
- E**
- editing
 - I/O Domain resources, 127
 - network resources (administrator), 51
 - RAC ID, 138
 - recipes, 86
 - SCAN (administrator), 113
 - user attributes, 75
 - editing a frozen I/O Domain, 152
 - email addresses for users, 75
 - Exadata Storage Server
 - configuring added storage servers, 59
 - exporting
 - for JOC, 241
 - text files for Oracle Enterprise Manager, 142
 - XML configuration files for database installation, 240
- F**
- fibre channel interfaces
 - addresses, 33
 - dependencies, 58
 - initialization, 33
 - support for, 58
 - freeze and thaw overview, 147
 - freezing an I/O Domain, 149
- G**
- generating configuration files, 261
- H**
- hardware settings, 239

Health Monitor screen (administrator), 165

I

I/O Domain
 JSON example, 176

I/O Domains
 choosing a creation method, 91
 creating, 91
 creating a Database I/O Domain, 97
 creating a Database Zone I/O Domain, 105
 deleting, 159
 deploying, 91, 133
 description, 23
 editing frozen domains, 152
 editing resources, 127
 freezing, 149
 freezing and thawing, 147
 monitoring activity (administrator), 164
 monitoring health (administrator), 165
 planning users, 62
 relocating, 147
 required information, 92
 thawing, 153
 user planning worksheet, 63
 verifying the thaw operation, 157
 viewing, 95

Identify Compute Node page, reviewing, 245

importing the configuration file, 244

initializing the assistant, 27

install.sh
 running, 263
 script, 237

installing databases on Database Domains, 263

installing OEDA
 on a Database Domain, 237
 on a Database Zone Domain, 237

IP addresses
 configuring assignments, 36
 minimum, 19

iSCSI LUN resources, 58

J

joc_import file, 233, 248
JSON example, REST API, 176

K

key, REST API, 172

L

large resource recipe, 79
logging in to the assistant, 41
logging out of the assistant, 43
login button, REST API, 172

M

MAC addresses, alternate, 19

management agent
 description, 16
 starting, 168
 stopping, 168

Management and Private Networks page,
 reviewing, 246

managing
 recipes (administrator), 79
 resources, 45
 users, 61

medium resource recipe, 79

memory repository, 24

memory resources, viewing and managing, 45

monitoring
 activity, 163
 health (administrator), 165
 I/O Domain activity (administrator), 164

multiple client networks
 in a Database I/O Domain, 101
 in a Database Zone I/O Domain, 109
 in a domain created with an OVM template, 124
 in an Application I/O Domain, 117

N

- navigation panel
 - administrator, 14
 - users, 16
- navigation screens
 - Dedicated Domains, 48
 - Health Monitor (administrator), 165
 - I/O Domains, 95
 - Network Resources, 48
 - Physical Hosts, 45
 - Profile (user), 68
 - Queue, 163
 - Recipes, 80
 - Settings, 34, 239
 - System Log (administrator), 164
 - Users and Allowances (administrator), 64
- network identifiers for the REST API, 175
- network isolation, 53
- network recipes, creating, 84
- network resources
 - configuring port pairs, 53
 - editing (administrator), 51
 - setting up, 29
- Network Resources screen, 48
- networking resources, viewing and managing, 45

O

- OEDA, 235
 - defining clusters, 248
 - editing information, 258
 - generating configuration file, 261
 - getting the latest version, 235
 - identifying compute node OS, 245
 - importing configuration file, 244
 - importing XML file, 243
 - reviewing management and private networks, 246
 - SCAN, 258
 - starting, 242
- Oracle Enterprise Manager
 - text file, 135
 - zones text file, 142
- Oracle Solaris Cluster

- pinning a domain, 150
- special instructions for creating an Application Domain, 98, 106,

- osc-setcoremem, 24
- overview
 - administrative tasks, 20
 - administrator navigation panel, 14
 - domain configuration, 21
 - domains, 23
 - SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 13
 - user navigation panel, 16
- OVM templates
 - creating a domain, 120
 - uploading into the assistant, 87

P

- passwordless SSH, setting up for the root user, 263
- passwords
 - changing (user), 69
 - changing user (administrator), 71
 - default admin, 41
 - resetting (user), 70
 - resetting user (administrator), 73
- physical functions, 24
- Physical Hosts screen, 45
- pinning a domain
 - attaching an I/O domain to a host, 150
- planning
 - domain users worksheet, 63
 - I/O Domain configuration, 92
- port pairing, 53
- preparing
 - Database Domain configurations, 233
 - Database Zone configurations, 233
- privileges, 61
- Profile screen (user), 68

Q

- Queue screen, 163

R

RAC ID, 96, 97, 99

recipes

- deleting, 87
- editing, 86
- managing, 79
- viewing, 80

recipes (network), creating, 84

recipes (resource)

- creating, 82
- defaults, 79

Recipes screen, 80

reference, REST APIs, 180

relocating an I/O Domain, 147

repositories, CPU and memory, 24

requirements, I/O Domain, 19

resetting

- passwords (user), 70
- user passwords (administrator), 73

resource recipes, creating, 82

resources

- description, 24
- for freezing and thawing, 148
- viewing, 45
- viewing resource allowances (user), 68

REST API

- authentication token, getting, 171
- Authorize button, 172
- catalog, 172
- I/O Domain JSON example, 176
- Login button, 172
- network identifiers, 175
- reference, 180
- using, 171

reviewing

- configuration information, 244
- Identify Compute Node page, 245
- Management and Private Networks page, 246

roles, setting, 75

root domain groups

- configuring, 38
- enabling or disabling, 37

root domains

- configuring, 24
- description, 23
- using, 24
- viewing, 48

running the `install.sh` script, 263

S

SCAN network

- editing name, 113

security

- configuring, 34
- parameters, 35
- setting user roles, 75
- small resource recipe, 79

Solaris CI, 133

SR-IOV domain, description, 23

SRUs, 133

starting

- I/O Domain, 170
- management agent, 168
- OEDA, 242
- SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 27

stopping

- I/O Domain, 170
- management agent, 168

storage resources, 58

storage resources, viewing and managing, 45

SuperCluster Virtual Assistant

- authentication tokens for the API, 171
- checking the version, 18
- initializing, 27
- logging in, 41
- logging out, 43
- overview, 13
- requirements, 19
- REST API, 171
- setting up networks, 29
- starting, 27
- tips, 43

System Log screen (administrator), 164

T

- task overview
 - administrative, 20
 - domain configuration, 21
- thaw and freeze overview, 147
- thawing an I/O Domain, 153
- tool tips, 43
- transforming
 - a Database I/O Domain into a Database Zone Domain, 131
- types of domains, 23

U

- understanding the Oracle SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 13
- user navigation panel, 16
- users
 - adding, 64
 - allocating resources, 66
 - deleting, 76
 - editing attributes, 75
 - email addresses, 75
 - managing, 61
 - planning, 62
 - roles and privileges, 61
 - viewing, 64
- Users and Allowances screen (administrator), 64

V

- verifying
 - Application domain, 119
 - Database Domain, 104
 - Database Zone Domain, 112
 - disk space for Database I/O Domain, 234
 - disk space for Database Zone, 234
 - domain created with an OVM template, 125
 - freeze and thaw operations, 157
- version
 - SuperCluster Virtual Assistant, 18
- viewing

- dedicated domain resources, 48
- I/O Domains, 95
- recipes (resource and network), 80
- resource allowances (user), 68
- resources, 45
- users, 64
- virtual functions, 24
- VLAN tags
 - adding, 56
 - deleting, 57

W

- worksheet for planning users, 63

X

- XML configuration file, 240

Z

- zone
 - configuring a zone in a domain, 137
 - deleting zone configuration information, 145
 - description, 15, 17
 - Export for JOC, 15, 17
 - exporting zones text file, 142
 - overview, 137
 - parameters, 139